

ISO 20022

Bank-to-Customer Cash Management - Maintenance 2017 - 2018

Message Definition Report - Part 2

Approved by the Payments SEG on the 15th of January 2018.

This document provides details of the Message Definitions for Bank-to-Customer Cash Management - Maintenance 2017 - 2018.

01 February 2018

Table of Contents

1	Message Set Overview	3
1.1	List of MessageDefinitions	3
2	camt.052.001.07 BankToCustomerAccountReportV07	4
2.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	4
2.2	Structure	5
2.3	Constraints	6
2.4	Message Building Blocks	8
3	camt.053.001.07 BankToCustomerStatementV07	29
3.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	29
3.2	Structure	30
3.3	Constraints	31
3.4	Message Building Blocks	33
4	camt.054.001.07 BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV07	54
4.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	54
4.2	Structure	55
4.3	Constraints	56
4.4	Message Building Blocks	58
5	camt.060.001.04 AccountReportingRequestV04	78
5.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	78
5.2	Structure	79
5.3	Constraints	80
5.4	Message Building Blocks	80
6	Message Items Types	89
6.1	MessageComponents	89
6.2	Message Datatypes	324

1 Message Set Overview

Introduction

This document describes the Bank To Customer Cash Management message set.

1.1 List of MessageDefinitions

The following table lists all MessageDefinitions described in this book.

MessageDefinition	Definition
camt.052.001.07 BankToCustomerAccountReportV07	The BankToCustomerAccountReport message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries reported to the account, and/or to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.
camt.053.001.07 BankToCustomerStatementV07	The BankToCustomerStatement message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It is used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries booked to the account, and to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.
camt.054.001.07 BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV07	The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of single or multiple debit and/or credit entries reported to the account.
camt.060.001.04 AccountReportingRequestV04	The AccountReportingRequest message is sent by the account owner, either directly or through a forwarding agent, to one of its account servicing institutions. It is used to ask the account servicing institution to send a report on the account owner's account in a BankToCustomerAccountReport (camt.052.001.03), a BankToCustomerStatement (camt.053.001.03) or a BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification (camt.054.001.03).

2 camt.052.001.07 BankToCustomerAccountReportV07

2.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

Scope

The BankToCustomerAccountReport message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries reported to the account, and/or to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.

Usage

The BankToCustomerAccountReport message can contain reports for more than one account. It provides information for cash management and/or reconciliation. It can be used to:

- report pending and booked items;
- provide balance information.

It can include underlying details of transactions that have been included in the entry.

It is possible that the receiver of the message is not the account owner, but a party entitled by the account owner to receive the account information (also known as recipient).

For a statement, the Bank-to-Customer Account Statement message should be used.

Outline

The BankToCustomerAccountReportV07 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Common information for the message.

B. Report

Reports on a cash account.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

2.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <BkToCstmrAcctRpt>	[1..1]		C16, C20	
	GroupHeader <GrpHdr>	[1..1]	±		8
	Report <Rpt>	[1..*]			8
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		10
	ReportPagination <RptPgtn>	[0..1]	±		10
	ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		10
	ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		10
	LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		11
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		11
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		11
	CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		11
	ReportingSource <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		12
	Account <Acct>	[1..1]	±		12
	RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±		12
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		13
	Balance <Bal>	[0..*]	±	C12	14
	TransactionsSummary <TxSummry>	[0..1]	±		15
	Entry <Ntry>	[0..*]		C18	16
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		17
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	17
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		18
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		18
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		18
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		19
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		19
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		19
	Availability <Avlbty>	[0..*]	±		20
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	20
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		21

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]	±		21
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		21
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		23
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>	[0..1]			23
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		24
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		24
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		24
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		25
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		27
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		28
	AdditionalReportInformation <AddtlRptInf>	[0..1]	Text		28
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C21	28

2.3 Constraints

C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

C3 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

C4 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

C5 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

C6 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

C7 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

C8 DescriptionPresenceRule

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

C9 DescriptionUsageRule

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

C10 DomainOrProprietaryRule

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

C11 FamilyAndSubFamilyRule

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

C12 ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

C13 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

C14 ISINGuideline

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

C15 ISINPresenceRule

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

C16 MessageOrReportPaginationRule

MessagePagination may be present or ReportPagination may be present, but not both.

Following Must be True
 /GroupHeader/MessagePagination Must be absent
 Or /Report[*]/ReportPagination Must be absent

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C17 OtherIdentificationPresenceRule

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

C18 ReferenceGuideline

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

C19 ReturnReasonRule

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

C20 SupplementaryDataRule

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C21 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

2.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

2.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Common information for the message.

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following elements (see ["GroupHeader73"](#) on page 216 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		216
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		216
	MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>	[0..1]	±		216
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		217
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnBizQry>	[0..1]	±		217
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		217

2.4.2 Report <Rpt>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Reports on a cash account.

Report <Rpt> contains the following AccountReport22 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		10
	ReportPagination <RptPgntn>	[0..1]	±		10
	ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		10
	ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		10
	LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		11
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		11
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		11
	CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		11
	ReportingSource <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		12
	Account <Acct>	[1..1]	±		12
	RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±		12
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		13
	Balance <Bal>	[0..*]	±	C12	14
	TransactionsSummary <TxSmmry>	[0..1]	±		15
	Entry <Ntry>	[0..*]		C18	16
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		17
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	17
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		18
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		18
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		18
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		19
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		19
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		19
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		20
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	20
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		21
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]	±		21
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		21
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		23
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>	[0..1]			23

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		24
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		24
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		24
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		25
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		27
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		28
	AdditionalReportInformation <AddtlRptInf>	[0..1]	Text		28

2.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the account report.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

2.4.2.2 ReportPagination <RptPgntn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the page number of the report.

Usage: The pagination of the report is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

ReportPagination <RptPgntn> contains the following elements (see "Pagination1" on page 212 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		212
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		213

2.4.2.3 ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Sequential number of the report, as assigned by the account servicer.

Usage: The sequential number is increased incrementally for each report sent electronically.

Datatype: "Number" on page 349

2.4.2.4 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers, as provided in the request.

ReportingSequence <RptgSeq> contains one of the following elements (see "SequenceRange1Choice" on page 214 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			214
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		215
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		215

2.4.2.5 LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal sequential number of the report, as assigned by the account servicer. It is increased incrementally for each report sent.

Datatype: "Number" on page 349

2.4.2.6 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the report was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 346

2.4.2.7 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the account report is issued.

FromToDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

2.4.2.8 CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

Datatype: "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 330

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

2.4.2.9 ReportingSource <RptgSrc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the application used to generate the reporting.

ReportingSource <RptgSrc> contains one of the following elements (see "[ReportingSource1Choice](#)" on page 213 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		213
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		213

2.4.2.10 Account <Acct>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account to which credit and debit entries are made.

Account <Acct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount36](#)" on page 91 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		92
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		92
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	92
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		93
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		93
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		93

2.4.2.11 RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the parent account of the account for which the report has been issued.

RelatedAccount <RltdAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount24" on page 89 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		89
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		89
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	90
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		90

2.4.2.12 Interest <Intrst>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides general interest information that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

Interest <Intrst> contains the following elements (see "AccountInterest4" on page 247 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		249
	Rate <Rate>	[0..*]			249
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		249
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			250
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			250
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			251
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		252
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		252
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	252
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		253
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		253
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			253
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		253
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		253
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	253

2.4.2.13 Balance <Bal>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to define the balance as a numerical representation of the net increases and decreases in an account at a specific point in time.

Impacted by: C12 "ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule"

Balance <Bal> contains the following elements (see "CashBalance8" on page 116 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		116
	CreditLine <CdtLine>	[0..*]	±		117
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	117
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		118
	Availability <Avlbty>	[0..*]	±		118

Constraints

- **ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

2.4.2.14 TransactionsSummary <TxSummary>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides summary information on entries.

TransactionsSummary <TxSummary> contains the following elements (see "TotalTransactions6" on page 232 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			233
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		233
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		233
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			234
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		235
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		235
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		235
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		235
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		236
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		236
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	236
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		237
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		237

2.4.2.15 Entry <Ntry>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Specifies an entry in the report.

Usage: At least one reference must be provided to identify the entry and its underlying transaction(s).

Usage Rule: In case of a Payments R-transaction the creditor / debtor referenced of the original payment initiation messages is also used for reporting of the R-transaction. The original debtor/creditor in the reporting of R-Transactions is not inverted.

Following elements all defined in the TransactionDetails in RelatedParties or RelatedAgents are impacted by this usage rule:

Creditor, UltimateCreditor, CreditorAccount, CreditorAgent, Debtor, UltimateDebtor, DebtorAccount and DebtorAgent.

Impacted by: C18 "ReferenceGuideline"

Entry <Ntry> contains the following **ReportEntry9** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		17
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	17
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		18
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		18
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		18
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		19
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		19
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		19
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		20
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	20
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		21
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]	±		21
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		21
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		23
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>	[0..1]			23
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		24
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		24
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		24
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		25
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		27
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		28

Constraints

- **ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

2.4.2.15.1 EntryReference <NtryRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference for the entry.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

2.4.2.15.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money in the cash entry.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

2.4.2.15.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the entry is a credit or a debit entry.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

2.4.2.15.4 ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether or not the entry is the result of a reversal.

Usage: This element should only be present if the entry is the result of a reversal.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is CRDT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a debit entry.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is DBIT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a credit entry.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

2.4.2.15.5 Status <Sts>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Status of an entry on the books of the account servicer.

Status <Sts> contains one of the following elements (see ["EntryStatus1Choice"](#) on page 305 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		306
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		306

2.4.2.15.6 BookingDate <BookgDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time when an entry is posted to an account on the account servicer's books.

Usage: Booking date is the expected booking date, unless the status is booked, in which case it is the actual booking date.

BookingDate <BookgDt> contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

2.4.2.15.7 ValueDate <ValDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which assets become available to the account owner in case of a credit entry, or cease to be available to the account owner in case of a debit entry.

Usage: If entry status is pending and value date is present, then the value date refers to an expected/ requested value date.

For entries subject to availability/float and for which availability information is provided, the value date must not be used. In this case the availability component identifies the number of availability days.

ValueDate <ValDt> contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

2.4.2.15.8 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference as assigned by the account servicing institution to unambiguously identify the entry.

Datatype: ["Max35Text"](#) on page 352

2.4.2.15.9 Availability <Avlbt>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Indicates when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.*Usage:* This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.*Example:* When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).**Availability <Avlbt>** contains the following elements (see "CashAvailability1" on page 183 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			183
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		183
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		184
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	184
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184

2.4.2.15.10 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.*Impacted by:* C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule", C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"**BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>** contains the following elements (see "BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 119 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		119
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			119
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		120
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		120

Constraints

- DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True

/Domain Must be present

Or /Proprietary Must be present

- FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

2.4.2.15.11 CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the transaction is exempt from commission.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see ["YesNoIndicator"](#) on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

2.4.2.15.12 AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the underlying transaction details are provided through a separate message, as in the case of aggregate bookings.

AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd> contains the following elements (see ["MessageIdentification2"](#) on page 209 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		209
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		209

2.4.2.15.13 AmountDetails <AmtDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the original amount.

Usage: This component (on entry level) should be used when a total original batch or aggregate amount has to be provided. If required, the individual original amounts can be included in the same component on transaction details level.

AmountDetails <AmtDtls> contains the following elements (see "AmountAndCurrencyExchange3" on page 96 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			98
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	99
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			99
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	99
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		100
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		100
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		101
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			101
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	101
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			101
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		103
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		103
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		103
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			103
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	104
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			104
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		106
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		106
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		106
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			106
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	107
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			107

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		109
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		109
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		109
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			109
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		110
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	110
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			110
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		112
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		112
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		112

2.4.2.15.14 Charges <Chrgs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the charges, pre-advised or included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component is used on entry level in case of batch or aggregate bookings.

Charges <Chrgs> contains the following elements (see "[Charges4](#)" on [page 192](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	193
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		193

2.4.2.15.15 TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Channel used to technically input the instruction related to the entry.

TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanI> contains one of the following **TechnicalInputChannel1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		24
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		24

2.4.2.15.15.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

Datatype: "ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code" on page 339

2.4.2.15.15.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical channel used to input the instruction, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

2.4.2.15.16 Interest <Intrst>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component is used on entry level in the case of batch or aggregate bookings.

Interest <Intrst> contains the following elements (see "TransactionInterest4" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	238
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			239
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	240
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			241
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		241
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			242
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		242
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			242
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			243
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		243
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			244
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		245
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	245
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		245
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			246
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		246
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	246

2.4.2.15.17 CardTransaction <CardTx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the card transaction included in the entry amount, when globalised by the account servicer.

CardTransaction <CardTx> contains the following elements (see "CardEntry3" on page 217 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			219
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			220
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		221
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		221
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		221
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		221
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		221
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			222
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		222
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		222
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			222
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		223
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		223
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		223
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		223
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			223
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		224
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		225
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		225
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			225
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		225
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		226
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		226
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			227
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		227
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		227
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		227
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			227

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		228
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		228
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		228
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		228
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		229
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		229
	AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>	[0..1]			229
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		229
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		230
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		230
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			230
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		230
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		231
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]			231
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			231
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		231
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		232

2.4.2.15.18 EntryDetails <NtryDtls>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides details on the entry.

EntryDetails <NtryDtls> contains the following elements (see "EntryDetails8" on page 184 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Batch <Btch>	[0..1]			185
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		185
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		185
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxs>	[0..1]	Text		185
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	186
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	TransactionDetails <TxDtls>	[0..*]	±		186

2.4.2.15.19 AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Further details of the entry.*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 353**2.4.2.16 AdditionalReportInformation <AddtlRptInf>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Further details of the account report.*Datatype:* "Max500Text" on page 353**2.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>***Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.*Impacted by:* C21 "SupplementaryDataRule"**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 264 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		264
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		264

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

3 **camt.053.001.07** **BankToCustomerStatementV07**

3.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

Scope

The BankToCustomerStatement message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It is used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of the entries booked to the account, and to provide the owner with balance information on the account at a given point in time.

Usage

The BankToCustomerStatement message can contain reports for more than one account. It provides information for cash management and/or reconciliation.

It contains information on booked entries only.

It can include underlying details of transactions that have been included in the entry.

The message is exchanged as defined between the account servicer and the account owner. It provides information on items that have been booked to the account and also balance information. Depending on services and schedule agreed between banks and their customers, statements may be generated and exchanged accordingly, for example for intraday or prior day periods.

It is possible that the receiver of the message is not the account owner, but a party entitled through arrangement with the account owner to receive the account information (also known as recipient).

Outline

The BankToCustomerStatementV07 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Common information for the message.

B. Statement

Reports on booked entries and balances for a cash account.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

3.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <BkToCstmrStmt>	[1..1]		C16, C20	
	GroupHeader <GrpHdr>	[1..1]	±		33
	Statement <Stmt>	[1..*]			33
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		35
	StatementPagination <StmtPgntn>	[0..1]	±		35
	ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		35
	ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		35
	LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		36
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		36
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		36
	CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		36
	ReportingSource <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		37
	Account <Acct>	[1..1]	±		37
	RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±		37
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		38
	Balance <Bal>	[1..*]	±	C12	39
	TransactionsSummary <TxSummry>	[0..1]	±		40
	Entry <Ntry>	[0..*]		C18	41
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		42
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	42
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		43
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		43
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		43
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		44
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		44
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		44
	Availability <Avlbty>	[0..*]	±		45
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	45
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		46

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]	±		46
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		46
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		48
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>	[0..1]			48
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		49
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		49
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		49
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		50
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		52
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		53
	AdditionalStatementInformation <AddtlStmntInf>	[0..1]	Text		53
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C21	53

3.3 Constraints

C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

C3 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

C4 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

C5 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

C6 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

C7 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

C8 DescriptionPresenceRule

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

C9 DescriptionUsageRule

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

C10 DomainOrProprietaryRule

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

C11 FamilyAndSubFamilyRule

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

C12 ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

C13 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

C14 ISINGuideline

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

C15 ISINPresenceRule

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

C16 MessageOrStatementPaginationRule

MessagePagination may be present or StatementPagination may be present, but not both.

Following Must be True
 /GroupHeader/MessagePagination Must be absent
 Or /Statement[*]/StatementPagination Must be absent

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C17 OtherIdentificationPresenceRule

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

C18 ReferenceGuideline

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

C19 ReturnReasonRule

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

C20 SupplementaryDataRule

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C21 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

3.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

3.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Common information for the message.

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following elements (see ["GroupHeader73"](#) on page 216 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		216
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		216
	MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>	[0..1]	±		216
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		217
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnBizQry>	[0..1]	±		217
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		217

3.4.2 Statement <Stmt>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Reports on booked entries and balances for a cash account.

Statement <Stmnt> contains the following **AccountStatement8** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		35
	StatementPagination <StmntPgntn>	[0..1]	±		35
	ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		35
	ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		35
	LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		36
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		36
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		36
	CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		36
	ReportingSource <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		37
	Account <Acct>	[1..1]	±		37
	RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±		37
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		38
	Balance <Bal>	[1..*]	±	C12	39
	TransactionsSummary <TxSmmry>	[0..1]	±		40
	Entry <Ntry>	[0..*]		C18	41
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		42
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	42
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		43
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		43
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		43
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		44
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		44
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		44
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		45
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	45
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		46
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]	±		46
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		46
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		48
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>	[0..1]			48

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		49
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		49
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		49
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		50
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		52
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		53
	AdditionalStatementInformation <AddtlStmntInf>	[0..1]	Text		53

3.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the account statement.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

3.4.2.2 StatementPagination <StmntPgntn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the page number of the statement.

Usage: The pagination of the statement is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

StatementPagination <StmntPgntn> contains the following elements (see "Pagination1" on page 212 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		212
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		213

3.4.2.3 ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Sequential number of the statement, as assigned by the account servicer.

Usage: The sequential number is increased incrementally for each statement sent electronically.

Datatype: "Number" on page 349

3.4.2.4 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers, as provided in the request.

ReportingSequence <RptgSeq> contains one of the following elements (see "SequenceRange1Choice" on page 214 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			214
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		215
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		215

3.4.2.5 LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal sequential number of the statement, as assigned by the account servicer. It is increased incrementally for each statement sent.

Usage: Where a paper statement is a legal requirement, it may have a number different from the electronic sequential number. Paper statements could for instance only be sent if movement on the account has taken place, whereas electronic statements could be sent at the end of each reporting period, regardless of whether movements have taken place or not.

Datatype: "Number" on page 349

3.4.2.6 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the statement was created.

Datatype: "ISODatetime" on page 346

3.4.2.7 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the account statement is issued.

FromToDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

3.4.2.8 CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

Datatype: "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 330

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

3.4.2.9 ReportingSource <RptgSrc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the application used to generate the reporting.

ReportingSource <RptgSrc> contains one of the following elements (see "ReportingSource1Choice" on page 213 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		213
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		213

3.4.2.10 Account <Acct>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account to which credit and debit entries are made.

Account <Acct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount36" on page 91 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		92
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		92
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	92
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		93
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		93
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		93

3.4.2.11 RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the parent account of the account for which the statement has been issued.

RelatedAccount <RltdAcct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount24](#)" on page 89 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		89
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		89
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	90
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		90

3.4.2.12 Interest <Intrst>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides general interest information that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

Interest <Intrst> contains the following elements (see "AccountInterest4" on page 247 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		249
	Rate <Rate>	[0..*]			249
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		249
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			250
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			250
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			251
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		252
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		252
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	252
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		253
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		253
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			253
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		253
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		253
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	253

3.4.2.13 Balance <Bal>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to define the balance as a numerical representation of the net increases and decreases in an account at a specific point in time.

Impacted by: C12 "ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule"

Balance <Bal> contains the following elements (see "CashBalance8" on page 116 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		116
	CreditLine <CdtLine>	[0..*]	±		117
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	117
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		118
	Availability <Avlbty>	[0..*]	±		118

Constraints

- **ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

3.4.2.14 TransactionsSummary <TxsSummry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides summary information on entries.

TransactionsSummary <TxsSummry> contains the following elements (see "TotalTransactions6" on page 232 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			233
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		233
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		233
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			234
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		235
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		235
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		235
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		235
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		236
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		236
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	236
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		237
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		237

3.4.2.15 Entry <Ntry>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Specify an entry in the statement.

Usage: At least one reference must be provided to identify the entry and its underlying transaction(s).

Usage Rule: In case of a Payments R-transaction the creditor / debtor referenced of the original payment initiation messages is also used for reporting of the R-transaction. The original debtor/creditor in the reporting of R-Transactions is not inverted.

Following elements all defined in the TransactionDetails in RelatedParties or RelatedAgents are impacted by this usage rule:

Creditor, UltimateCreditor, CreditorAccount, CreditorAgent, Debtor, UltimateDebtor, DebtorAccount and DebtorAgent.

Impacted by: C18 "ReferenceGuideline"

Entry <Ntry> contains the following **ReportEntry9** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		42
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	42
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		43
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		43
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		43
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		44
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		44
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		44
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		45
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	45
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		46
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]	±		46
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		46
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		48
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>	[0..1]			48
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		49
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		49
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		49
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		50
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		52
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		53

Constraints

- **ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

3.4.2.15.1 EntryReference <NtryRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference for the entry.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

3.4.2.15.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money in the cash entry.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

3.4.2.15.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the entry is a credit or a debit entry.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

3.4.2.15.4 ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether or not the entry is the result of a reversal.

Usage: This element should only be present if the entry is the result of a reversal.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is CRDT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a debit entry.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is DBIT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a credit entry.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

3.4.2.15.5 Status <Sts>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Status of an entry on the books of the account servicer.

Status <Sts> contains one of the following elements (see ["EntryStatus1Choice"](#) on page 305 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		306
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		306

3.4.2.15.6 BookingDate <BookgDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time when an entry is posted to an account on the account servicer's books.

Usage: Booking date is the expected booking date, unless the status is booked, in which case it is the actual booking date.

BookingDate <BookgDt> contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

3.4.2.15.7 ValueDate <ValDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which assets become available to the account owner in case of a credit entry, or cease to be available to the account owner in case of a debit entry.

Usage: If entry status is pending and value date is present, then the value date refers to an expected/ requested value date.

For entries subject to availability/float and for which availability information is provided, the value date must not be used. In this case the availability component identifies the number of availability days.

ValueDate <ValDt> contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

3.4.2.15.8 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference as assigned by the account servicing institution to unambiguously identify the entry.

Datatype: ["Max35Text"](#) on page 352

3.4.2.15.9 Availability <Avlbt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Indicates when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

Usage: This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

Example: When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

Availability <Avlbt> contains the following elements (see "CashAvailability1" on page 183 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			183
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		183
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		184
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	184
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184

3.4.2.15.10 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

Impacted by: C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule", C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"

BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd> contains the following elements (see "BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 119 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		119
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			119
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		120
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		120

Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True

/Domain Must be present

Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

3.4.2.15.11 CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the transaction is exempt from commission.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see ["YesNoIndicator"](#) on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

3.4.2.15.12 AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the underlying transaction details are provided through a separate message, as in the case of aggregate bookings.

AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd> contains the following elements (see ["MessageIdentification2"](#) on page 209 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		209
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		209

3.4.2.15.13 AmountDetails <AmtDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the original amount.

Usage: This component (on entry level) should be used when a total original batch or aggregate amount has to be provided. If required, the individual original amounts can be included in the same component on transaction details level.

AmountDetails <AmtDtls> contains the following elements (see "AmountAndCurrencyExchange3" on page 96 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			98
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	99
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			99
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	99
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		100
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		100
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		101
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			101
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	101
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			101
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		103
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		103
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		103
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			103
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	104
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			104
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		106
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		106
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		106
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			106
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	107
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			107

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		109
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		109
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		109
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			109
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		110
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	110
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			110
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		112
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		112
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		112

3.4.2.15.14 Charges <Chrgs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the charges, pre-advised or included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component is used on entry level in case of batch or aggregate bookings.

Charges <Chrgs> contains the following elements (see "[Charges4](#)" on [page 192](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	193
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		193

3.4.2.15.15 TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Channel used to technically input the instruction related to the entry.

TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanI> contains one of the following **TechnicalInputChannel1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		49
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		49

3.4.2.15.15.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

Datatype: "ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code" on page 339

3.4.2.15.15.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical channel used to input the instruction, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

3.4.2.15.16 Interest <Intrst>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component is used on entry level in the case of batch or aggregate bookings.

Interest <Intrst> contains the following elements (see "TransactionInterest4" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	238
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			239
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	240
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			241
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		241
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			242
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		242
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			242
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			243
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		243
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			244
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		245
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	245
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		245
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			246
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		246
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	246

3.4.2.15.17 CardTransaction <CardTx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the card transaction included in the entry amount, when globalised by the account servicer.

CardTransaction <CardTx> contains the following elements (see "CardEntry3" on page 217 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			219
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			220
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		221
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		221
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		221
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		221
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		221
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			222
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		222
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		222
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			222
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		223
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		223
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		223
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		223
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			223
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		224
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		225
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		225
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			225
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		225
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		226
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		226
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			227
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		227
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		227
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		227
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			227

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		228
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		228
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		228
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		228
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		229
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		229
	AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>	[0..1]			229
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		229
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		230
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		230
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			230
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		230
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		231
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]			231
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			231
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		231
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		232

3.4.2.15.18 EntryDetails <NtryDtls>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides details on the entry.

EntryDetails <NtryDtls> contains the following elements (see "EntryDetails8" on page 184 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Batch <Btch>	[0..1]			185
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		185
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		185
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTx>	[0..1]	Text		185
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	186
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	TransactionDetails <TxDtls>	[0..*]	±		186

3.4.2.15.19 AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the entry.

Datatype: "Max500Text" on page 353

3.4.2.16 AdditionalStatementInformation <AddtlStmntInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the account statement.

Datatype: "Max500Text" on page 353

3.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C21 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 264 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		264
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		264

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

4 camt.054.001.07

BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV07

4.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

Scope

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message is sent by the account servicer to an account owner or to a party authorised by the account owner to receive the message. It can be used to inform the account owner, or authorised party, of single or multiple debit and/or credit entries reported to the account.

Usage

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message can contain reports for more than one account. It provides information for cash management and/or reconciliation.

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification message can be used to:

- report pending and booked items;
- notify one or more debit entries;
- notify one or more credit entries;
- notify a combination of debit and credit entries.

It can include underlying details of transactions that have been included in the entry.

It is possible that the receiver of the message is not the account owner, but a party entitled by the account owner to receive the account information (also known as recipient).

It does not contain balance information.

Outline

The BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotificationV07 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Common information for the message.

B. Notification

Notifies debit and credit entries for the account.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

4.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <BkToCstmrDbtCdtNtfctn>	[1..1]		C15, C19	
	GroupHeader <GrpHdr>	[1..1]	±		58
	Notification <Ntfctn>	[1..*]			58
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		60
	NotificationPagination <NtfctnPgntn>	[0..1]	±		60
	ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		60
	ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		60
	LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		61
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		61
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		61
	CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		61
	ReportingSource <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		62
	Account <Acct>	[1..1]	±		62
	RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±		62
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		63
	TransactionsSummary <Txsumry>	[0..1]	±		64
	Entry <Ntry>	[0..*]		C17	65
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		66
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	66
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		67
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		67
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		68
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		68
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		68
	Availability <Avlbty>	[0..*]	±		69
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	69
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		70
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]	±		70

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		70
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		72
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>	[0..1]			72
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		73
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		73
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		73
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		74
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		76
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		77
	AdditionalNotificationInformation <AddtlNtfctnInf>	[0..1]	Text		77
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C20	77

4.3 Constraints

C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

C3 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

C4 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

C5 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

C6 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

C7 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

C8 DescriptionPresenceRule

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

C9 DescriptionUsageRule

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

C10 DomainOrProprietaryRule

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

C11 FamilyAndSubFamilyRule

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

C12 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

C13 ISINGuideline

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

C14 ISINPresenceRule

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

C15 MessageOrNotificationPaginationRule

MessagePagination may be present or NotificationPagination may be present, but not both.

Following Must be True
 /GroupHeader/MessagePagination Must be absent
 Or /Notification[*]/NotificationPagination Must be absent

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C16 OtherIdentificationPresenceRule

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

C17 ReferenceGuideline

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

C18 ReturnReasonRule

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

C19 SupplementaryDataRule

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C20 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

4.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

4.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Common information for the message.

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following elements (see "GroupHeader73" on page 216 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		216
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		216
	MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>	[0..1]	±		216
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		217
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>	[0..1]	±		217
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		217

4.4.2 Notification <Ntfctn>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Notifies debit and credit entries for the account.

Notification <Ntfctn> contains the following **AccountNotification15** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		60
	NotificationPagination <NtfctnPgntn>	[0..1]	±		60
	ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		60
	ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		60
	LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		61
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		61
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		61
	CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		61
	ReportingSource <RptgSrc>	[0..1]	±		62
	Account <Acct>	[1..1]	±		62
	RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>	[0..1]	±		62
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..*]	±		63
	TransactionsSummary <TxSSummary>	[0..1]	±		64
	Entry <Ntry>	[0..*]		C17	65
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		66
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	66
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		67
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		67
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		68
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		68
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		68
	Availability <Avlbty>	[0..*]	±		69
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	69
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		70
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]	±		70
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		70
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		72
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>	[0..1]			72
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		73

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		73
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		73
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		74
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		76
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		77
	AdditionalNotificationInformation <AddtlNtfctnInf>	[0..1]	Text		77

4.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the account servicer, to unambiguously identify the account notification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

4.4.2.2 NotificationPagination <NtfctnPgntn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the page number of the notification.

Usage: The pagination of the notification is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

NotificationPagination <NtfctnPgntn> contains the following elements (see "Pagination1" on page 212 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		212
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		213

4.4.2.3 ElectronicSequenceNumber <ElctrncSeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Sequential number of the notification, as assigned by the account servicer.

Usage: The sequential number is increased incrementally for each notification sent electronically.

Datatype: "Number" on page 349

4.4.2.4 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers, as provided in the request.

ReportingSequence <RptgSeq> contains one of the following elements (see "SequenceRange1Choice" on page 214 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			214
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		215
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		215

4.4.2.5 LegalSequenceNumber <LglSeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal sequential number of the notification, as assigned by the account servicer. It is increased incrementally for each notification sent.

Datatype: "Number" on page 349

4.4.2.6 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the notification was created.

Datatype: "ISODatetime" on page 346

4.4.2.7 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the account notification is issued.

FromToDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

4.4.2.8 CopyDuplicateIndicator <CpyDplctInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

Datatype: "CopyDuplicate1Code" on page 330

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

4.4.2.9 ReportingSource <RptgSrc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the application used to generate the reporting.

ReportingSource <RptgSrc> contains one of the following elements (see "[ReportingSource1Choice](#)" on page 213 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		213
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		213

4.4.2.10 Account <Acct>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account to which credit and debit entries are made.

Account <Acct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount36](#)" on page 91 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		92
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		92
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	92
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		93
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		93
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		93

4.4.2.11 RelatedAccount <RltdAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the parent account of the account for which the notification has been issued.

RelatedAccount <RltdAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount24" on page 89 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		89
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		89
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	90
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		90

4.4.2.12 Interest <Intrst>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides general interest information that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

Interest <Intrst> contains the following elements (see "AccountInterest4" on page 247 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		249
	Rate <Rate>	[0..*]			249
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		249
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			250
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			250
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			251
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		252
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		252
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	252
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		253
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		253
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			253
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		253
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		253
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	253

4.4.2.13 TransactionsSummary <TxSummary>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides summary information on entries.

TransactionsSummary <TxSummary> contains the following elements (see "TotalTransactions6" on page 232 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			233
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		233
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		233
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			234
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		235
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		235
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		235
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		235
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		236
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		236
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	236
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		237
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		237

4.4.2.14 Entry <Ntry>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Specifies an entry in the debit credit notification.

Usage: At least one reference must be provided to identify the entry and its underlying transaction(s).

Usage Rule: In case of a Payments R-transaction the creditor / debtor referenced of the original payment initiation messages is also used for reporting of the R-transaction. The original debtor/creditor in the reporting of R-Transactions is not inverted.

Following elements all defined in the TransactionDetails in RelatedParties or RelatedAgents are impacted by this usage rule:

Creditor, UltimateCreditor, CreditorAccount, CreditorAgent, Debtor, UltimateDebtor, DebtorAccount and DebtorAgent.

Impacted by: C17 "ReferenceGuideline"

Entry <Ntry> contains the following **ReportEntry9** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EntryReference <NtryRef>	[0..1]	Text		66
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	66
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		67
	ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		67
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		67
	BookingDate <BookgDt>	[0..1]	±		68
	ValueDate <ValDt>	[0..1]	±		68
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		68
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		69
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	69
	CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrlInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		70
	AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>	[0..1]	±		70
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		70
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		72
	TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>	[0..1]			72
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		73
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		73
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		73
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]	±		74
	EntryDetails <NtryDtls>	[0..*]	±		76
	AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>	[0..1]	Text		77

Constraints

- **ReferenceGuideline**

At least one reference should be present to identify the underlying transaction(s).

4.4.2.14.1 EntryReference <NtryRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference for the entry.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

4.4.2.14.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money in the cash entry.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

4.4.2.14.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the entry is a credit or a debit entry.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

4.4.2.14.4 ReversalIndicator <RvslInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether or not the entry is the result of a reversal.

Usage: This element should only be present if the entry is the result of a reversal.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is CRDT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a debit entry.

If the CreditDebitIndicator is DBIT and ReversalIndicator is Yes, the original operation was a credit entry.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

4.4.2.14.5 Status <Sts>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Status of an entry on the books of the account servicer.

Status <Sts> contains one of the following elements (see ["EntryStatus1Choice"](#) on page 305 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		306
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		306

4.4.2.14.6 BookingDate <BookgDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time when an entry is posted to an account on the account servicer's books.

Usage: Booking date is the expected booking date, unless the status is booked, in which case it is the actual booking date.

BookingDate <BookgDt> contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

4.4.2.14.7 ValueDate <ValDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which assets become available to the account owner in case of a credit entry, or cease to be available to the account owner in case of a debit entry.

Usage: If entry status is pending and value date is present, then the value date refers to an expected/requested value date.

For entries subject to availability/float and for which availability information is provided, the value date must not be used. In this case the availability component identifies the number of availability days.

ValueDate <ValDt> contains one of the following elements (see ["DateAndDateTime2Choice"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

4.4.2.14.8 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference as assigned by the account servicing institution to unambiguously identify the entry.

Datatype: ["Max35Text"](#) on page 352

4.4.2.14.9 Availability <Avlbt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Indicates when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

Usage: This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

Example: When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

Availability <Avlbt> contains the following elements (see "CashAvailability1" on page 183 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			183
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		183
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		184
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	184
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184

4.4.2.14.10 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

Impacted by: C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule", C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"

BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd> contains the following elements (see "BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 119 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		119
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			119
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		120
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		120

Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True

/Domain Must be present

Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

4.4.2.14.11 CommissionWaiverIndicator <ComssnWvrInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the transaction is exempt from commission.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see ["YesNoIndicator"](#) on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

4.4.2.14.12 AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the underlying transaction details are provided through a separate message, as in the case of aggregate bookings.

AdditionalInformationIndicator <AddtlInfInd> contains the following elements (see ["MessageIdentification2"](#) on page 209 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		209
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		209

4.4.2.14.13 AmountDetails <AmtDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the original amount.

Usage: This component (on entry level) should be used when a total original batch or aggregate amount has to be provided. If required, the individual original amounts can be included in the same component on transaction details level.

AmountDetails <AmtDtls> contains the following elements (see "AmountAndCurrencyExchange3" on page 96 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			98
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	99
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			99
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	99
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		100
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		100
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		101
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			101
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	101
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			101
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		103
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		103
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		103
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			103
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	104
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			104
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		106
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		106
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		106
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			106
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	107
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			107

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		109
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		109
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		109
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			109
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		110
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	110
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			110
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		112
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		112
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		112

4.4.2.14.14 Charges <Chrgs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the charges, pre-advised or included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component is used on entry level in case of batch or aggregate bookings.

Charges <Chrgs> contains the following elements (see "[Charges4](#)" on [page 192](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	193
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		193

4.4.2.14.15 TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Channel used to technically input the instruction related to the entry.

TechnicalInputChannel <TechInptChanI> contains one of the following **TechnicalInputChannel1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		73
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		73

4.4.2.14.15.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

Datatype: "ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code" on page 339

4.4.2.14.15.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical channel used to input the instruction, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

4.4.2.14.16 Interest <Intrst>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component is used on entry level in the case of batch or aggregate bookings.

Interest <Intrst> contains the following elements (see "TransactionInterest4" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	238
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			239
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	240
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			241
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		241
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			242
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		242
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			242
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			243
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		243
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			244
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		245
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	245
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		245
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			246
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		246
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	246

4.4.2.14.17 CardTransaction <CardTx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the card transaction included in the entry amount, when globalised by the account servicer.

CardTransaction <CardTx> contains the following elements (see "CardEntry3" on page 217 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			219
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			220
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		221
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		221
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		221
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		221
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		221
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			222
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		222
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		222
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			222
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		223
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		223
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		223
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		223
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			223
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		224
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		225
	GroupIdentification <GrpId>	[0..1]	Text		225
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			225
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		225
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		226
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		226
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			227
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		227
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		227
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		227
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			227

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		228
	ManufacturerIdentification <Manfctrld>	[0..1]	Text		228
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		228
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		228
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		229
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		229
	AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>	[0..1]			229
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		229
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		230
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnld>	[0..1]	Text		230
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			230
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		230
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		231
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]			231
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			231
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		231
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		232

4.4.2.14.18 EntryDetails <NtryDtls>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides details on the entry.

EntryDetails <NtryDtls> contains the following elements (see "EntryDetails8" on page 184 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Batch <Btch>	[0..1]			185
	MessageIdentification <Msgld>	[0..1]	Text		185
	PaymentInformationIdentification <Pmtlnfld>	[0..1]	Text		185
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxs>	[0..1]	Text		185
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	186
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	TransactionDetails <TxDtls>	[0..*]	±		186

4.4.2.14.19 AdditionalEntryInformation <AddtlNtryInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the entry.

Datatype: "Max500Text" on page 353

4.4.2.15 AdditionalNotificationInformation <AddtlNtfctnInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the account notification.

Datatype: "Max500Text" on page 353

4.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C20 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 264 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		264
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		264

Constraints

- SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

5 camt.060.001.04

AccountReportingRequestV04

5.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

Scope

The AccountReportingRequest message is sent by the account owner, either directly or through a forwarding agent, to one of its account servicing institutions. It is used to ask the account servicing institution to send a report on the account owner's account in a BankToCustomerAccountReport (camt.052.001.03), a BankToCustomerStatement (camt.053.001.03) or a BankToCustomerDebitCreditNotification (camt.054.001.03).

Usage

The AccountReportingRequest message is used to advise the account servicing institution of funds that the account owner expects to have credited to its account. The message can be used in either a direct or a relay scenario.

Outline

The AccountReportingRequestV04 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Set of elements used to provide further details on the message.

B. ReportingRequest

Set of elements used to provide further details on the reporting request.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

5.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<i>Message root</i> <Document> <AcctRptgReq>	[1..1]			
	GroupHeader <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			80
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		81
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		81
	MessageSender <MsgSndr>	[0..1]	±		81
	ReportingRequest <RptgReq>	[1..*]			81
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		82
	RequestedMessageNameIdentification <ReqdMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		82
	Account <Acct>	[0..1]	±		82
	AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>	[1..1]	±		83
	AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>	[0..1]	±		83
	ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>	[0..1]			83
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[1..1]	±		84
	FromToTime <FrToTm>	[0..1]			84
	FromTime <FrTm>	[1..1]	Time		84
	ToTime <ToTm>	[0..1]	Time		84
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
	ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		85
	RequestedTransactionType <ReqdTxDp>	[0..1]			85
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		86
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		86
	FloorLimit <FlrLmt>	[0..*]			86
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	86
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		87
	RequestedBalanceType <ReqdBalTp>	[0..*]	±		87
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C7	87

5.3 Constraints

C1 **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

C2 **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

C3 **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

C4 **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

C5 **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

C6 **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

C7 **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

5.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

5.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide further details on the message.

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following **GroupHeader76** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		81
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		81
	MessageSender <MsgSndr>	[0..1]	±		81

5.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the account owner or the party authorised to send the message, and sent to the account servicing institution, to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The sender has to make sure that 'MessageIdentification' is unique per account servicing institution for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

5.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 346

5.4.1.3 MessageSender <MsgSndr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the party that is sending the message, when different from the account owner.

MessageSender <MsgSndr> contains one of the following elements (see "Party35Choice" on page 273 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		273
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		273

5.4.2 ReportingRequest <RptgReq>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide further details on the reporting request.

ReportingRequest <RptgReq> contains the following **ReportingRequest4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		82
	RequestedMessageNameIdentification <ReqdMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		82
	Account <Acct>	[0..1]	±		82
	AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>	[1..1]	±		83
	AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>	[0..1]	±		83
	ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>	[0..1]			83
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[1..1]	±		84
	FromTime <FrToTm>	[0..1]			84
	FromTime <FrTm>	[1..1]	Time		84
	ToTime <ToTm>	[0..1]	Time		84
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
	ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>	[0..1]	±		85
	RequestedTransactionType <ReqdTxDp>	[0..1]			85
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		86
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		86
	FloorLimit <FlrLmt>	[0..*]			86
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	86
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		87
	RequestedBalanceType <ReqdBalTp>	[0..*]	±		87

5.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the account owner, to unambiguously identify the account reporting request.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

5.4.2.2 RequestedMessageNameIdentification <ReqdMsgNmId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of the requested reporting message.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

5.4.2.3 Account <Acct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account to which the reporting request refers.

Account <Acct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount24" on page 89 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		89
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		89
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	90
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		90

5.4.2.4 AccountOwner <AcctOwnr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Party that legally owns the account.

AccountOwner <AcctOwnr> contains one of the following elements (see "Party35Choice" on page 273 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		273
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		273

5.4.2.5 AccountServicer <AcctSvcr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that manages the account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

AccountServicer <AcctSvcr> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

5.4.2.6 ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the requested reporting period.

ReportingPeriod <RptgPrd> contains the following **ReportingPeriod2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[1..1]	±		84
	FromTime <FrToTm>	[0..1]			84
	FromTime <FrTm>	[1..1]	Time		84
	ToTime <ToTm>	[0..1]	Time		84
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84

5.4.2.6.1 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a date range.

FromDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see ["DatePeriodDetails1"](#) on page 197 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		197
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		198

5.4.2.6.2 FromToTime <FrToTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies a time range.

FromToTime <FrToTm> contains the following **TimePeriodDetails1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromTime <FrTm>	[1..1]	Time		84
	ToTime <ToTm>	[0..1]	Time		84

5.4.2.6.2.1 FromTime <FrTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Time at which the time span starts.

Datatype: ["ISOTime"](#) on page 354

5.4.2.6.2.2 ToTime <ToTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Time at which the time span ends.

Datatype: ["ISOTime"](#) on page 354

5.4.2.6.3 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies whether all matching items need to be reported or only those items that are new or have changed since the last similar request was made.

Datatype: "QueryType3Code" on page 342

CodeName	Name	Definition
ALLL	All	Specifies that the query requests that all matching items be returned.
CHNG	Changed	Specifies that the query requests that only new matching items since the last similar query be returned.
MODF	Modified	Specifies that the query requests that only items that have changed since the last query be returned.

5.4.2.7 ReportingSequence <RptgSeq>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the range of identification sequence numbers which are being requested.

ReportingSequence <RptgSeq> contains one of the following elements (see "SequenceRange1Choice" on page 214 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			214
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		215
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		215

5.4.2.8 RequestedTransactionType <ReqdTxDp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the transactions to be reported.

RequestedTransactionType <ReqdTxDp> contains the following **TransactionType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Status <Sts>	[1..1]	±		86
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		86
	FloorLimit <FlrLmt>	[0..*]			86
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	86
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		87

5.4.2.8.1 Status <Sts>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the status on the books of the account servicer of the transactions to be reported.**Status <Sts>** contains one of the following elements (see ["EntryStatus1Choice"](#) on page 305 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		306
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		306

5.4.2.8.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the reporting request refers to credit or debit entries.*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode"](#) on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

5.4.2.8.3 FloorLimit <FlrLmt>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Specifies the minimum value of entries to be reported in the requested message.**FloorLimit <FlrLmt>** contains the following **Limit2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C5	86
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		87

5.4.2.8.3.1 Amount <Amt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Minimum transaction amount to be reported in the requested message.*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C5 "CurrencyAmount"](#)*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 325**Constraints**

- ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.4.2.8.3.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the floor limit applies to credit, to debit or to both credit and debit entries.

Datatype: "FloorLimitType1Code" on page 339

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRED	Credit	Floor limit applies to credit entries.
DEBT	Debit	Floor limit applies to debit entries.
BOTH	Both	Floor limit applies to both credit and debit entries.

5.4.2.9 RequestedBalanceType <ReqdBalTp>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides details on the requested balance reporting.

RequestedBalanceType <ReqdBalTp> contains the following elements (see "BalanceType13" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			114
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		114
	SubType <SubTp>	[0..1]			114
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		114

5.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C7 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 264 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		264
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		264

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

6 Message Items Types

6.1 MessageComponents

6.1.1 Account

6.1.1.1 CashAccount24

Definition: Provides the details to identify an account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		89
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		89
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	90
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		90

6.1.1.1.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following elements (see "AccountIdentification4Choice" on page 94 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C13	94
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]			94
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		95
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			95
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		95
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		95
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		95

6.1.1.1.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following elements (see "[CashAccountType2Choice](#)" on page 91 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		91
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		91

6.1.1.1.3 Currency <Ccy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Usage: Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

Impacted by: [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

Datatype: "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.1.1.4 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

Usage: The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

Datatype: "[Max70Text](#)" on page 353

6.1.1.2 SecuritiesAccount19

Definition: Account to or from which a securities entry is made.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		91
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		91
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		91

6.1.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.1.2.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of securities account.

Type <Tp> contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification30" on page 209 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		209
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		209

6.1.1.2.3 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Description of the account.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 353

6.1.1.3 CashAccountType2Choice

Definition: Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		91
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		91

6.1.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Account type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalCashAccountType1Code" on page 334

6.1.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.1.4 CashAccount36

Definition: Provides the details to identify an account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		92
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		92
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	92
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		93
	Owner <Ownr>	[0..1]	±		93
	Servicer <Svcr>	[0..1]	±		93

6.1.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following elements (see "[AccountIdentification4Choice](#)" on page 94 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C13	94
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]			94
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		95
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			95
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		95
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		95
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		95

6.1.1.4.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following elements (see "[CashAccountType2Choice](#)" on page 91 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		91
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		91

6.1.1.4.3 Currency <Ccy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.1.4.4 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

Usage: The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 353

6.1.1.4.5 Owner <Ownr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that legally owns the account.

Owner <Ownr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification125" on page 268 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		268
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		268
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		269
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	269
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		269

6.1.1.4.6 Servicer <Svcr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that manages the account on behalf of the account owner, that is manages the registration and booking of entries on the account, calculates balances on the account and provides information about the account.

Servicer <Svcr> contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5](#)" on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.2 Account Identification

6.1.2.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

Definition: Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C13	94
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]			94
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		95
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			95
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		95
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		95
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		95

6.1.2.1.1 IBAN <IBAN>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

Impacted by: [C13 "IBAN"](#)

Datatype: ["IBAN2007Identifier"](#) on page 347

Constraints

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

6.1.2.1.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericAccountIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		95
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			95
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		95
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		95
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		95

6.1.2.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: "Max34Text" on page 352

6.1.2.1.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **AccountSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		95
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		95

6.1.2.1.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalAccountIdentification1Code" on page 332

6.1.2.1.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.2.1.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.3 Amount

6.1.3.1 AmountAndCurrencyExchange3

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the original amount.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			98
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	99
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			99
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	99
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		100
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		100
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		101
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			101
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	101
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			101
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		103
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		103
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		103
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			103
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	104
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			104
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		106
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		106
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		106
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			106
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	107
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			107
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	108

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		109
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		109
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		109
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			109
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		110
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	110
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			110
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		112
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		112
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		112

6.1.3.1.1 InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party and provides currency exchange information in case the instructed amount and/or currency is/are different from the entry amount and/or currency.

InstructedAmount <InstdAmt> contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	99
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			99
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	99
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		100
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		100
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		101

6.1.3.1.1.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.3.1.1.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg> contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	99
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		100
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		100
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		101

6.1.3.1.1.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.1.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.1.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.1.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

Usage: ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency ($\text{ExchangeRate} = \text{UnitCurrency} / \text{QuotedCurrency}$).

Datatype: "BaseOneRate" on page 349

6.1.3.1.1.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.3.1.1.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 346**6.1.3.1.1.2 TransactionAmount <TxAmt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Amount of the underlying transaction.**TransactionAmount <TxAmt>** contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	101
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			101
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		103
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		103
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		103

6.1.3.1.2.1 Amount <Amt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.3.1.2.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>*Presence:* [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg> contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		103
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		103
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		103

6.1.3.1.2.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.2.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.2.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326](#)

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.2.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

Usage: ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

Datatype: ["BaseOneRate" on page 349](#)

6.1.3.1.2.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

Datatype: ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)

6.1.3.1.2.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

Datatype: ["ISODateTime" on page 346](#)

6.1.3.1.3 CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide the countervalue amount and currency exchange information.

Usage: This can be either the counter amount quoted in an FX deal, or the result of the currency information applied to an instructed amount, before deduction of charges.

CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt> contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	104
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			104
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		106
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		106
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		106

6.1.3.1.3.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.3.1.3.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg> contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		106
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		106
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		106

6.1.3.1.3.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.3.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.3.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.3.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

Usage: ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

Datatype: "BaseOneRate" on page 349

6.1.3.1.3.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.3.1.3.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

Datatype: "ISODatetime" on page 346

6.1.3.1.4 AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money, based on terms of corporate action event and balance of underlying securities, entitled to/from the account owner.

In some situations, this amount may alternatively be called entitled amount.

AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt> contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	107
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			107
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		109
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		109
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		109

6.1.3.1.4.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.3.1.4.2 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg> contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		109
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		109
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		109

6.1.3.1.4.2.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.4.2.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.4.2.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.4.2.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

Usage: ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

Datatype: "BaseOneRate" on page 349

6.1.3.1.4.2.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.3.1.4.2.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

Datatype: "ISODatetime" on page 346

6.1.3.1.5 ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the original amount and currency exchange.

ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt> contains the following **AmountAndCurrencyExchangeDetails4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		110
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	110
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			110
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		112
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		112
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		112

6.1.3.1.5.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of amount.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.3.1.5.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be exchanged against another amount of money in the counter currency.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.3.1.5.3 CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the currency exchange.

CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg> contains the following **CurrencyExchange5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		112
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		112
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		112

6.1.3.1.5.3.1 SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Currency from which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.5.3.2 TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Currency into which an amount is to be converted in a currency conversion.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.5.3.3 UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Currency in which the rate of exchange is expressed in a currency exchange. In the example 1GBP = xxxCUR, the unit currency is GBP.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.3.1.5.3.4 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

Usage: ExchangeRate expresses the ratio between UnitCurrency and QuotedCurrency (ExchangeRate = UnitCurrency/QuotedCurrency).

Datatype: "BaseOneRate" on page 349

6.1.3.1.5.3.5 ContractIdentification <CtrctId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification to unambiguously identify the foreign exchange contract.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.3.1.5.3.6 QuotationDate <QtnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which an exchange rate is quoted.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 346

6.1.3.2 AmountAndDirection35

Definition: Resulting debit or credit amount of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Quantity		112
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112

6.1.3.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Resulting amount of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries.

Datatype: "NonNegativeDecimalNumber" on page 349

6.1.3.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the amount is a credit or a debit amount.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.1.4 Amount Range

6.1.4.1 AmountRangeBoundary1

Definition: Limit for an amount range.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		113
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		113

6.1.4.1.1 BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount value of the range limit.

Datatype: "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

6.1.4.1.2 Included <Incl>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the boundary amount is included in the range of amount values.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

6.1.5 Balance

6.1.5.1 BalanceType13

Definition: Set of elements used to define the balance type and sub-type.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			114
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		114
	SubType <SubTp>	[0..1]			114
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		114

6.1.5.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format balance type.**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **BalanceType10Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		114

6.1.5.1.1.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Balance type, in a coded format.*Datatype:* ["ExternalBalanceType1Code" on page 333](#)**6.1.5.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Balance type, in a proprietary format.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)**6.1.5.1.2 SubType <SubTp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the balance sub-type.**SubType <SubTp>** contains one of the following **BalanceSubType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		114

6.1.5.1.2.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Balance sub-type, as published in an external balance sub-type code list.*Datatype:* ["ExternalBalanceSubType1Code" on page 333](#)**6.1.5.1.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies a proprietary code for the balance type.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)**6.1.5.2 CreditLine3***Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details of the credit line.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		115
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			115
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		115
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	115
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		116

6.1.5.2.1 Included <Incl>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether or not the credit line is included in the balance.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

6.1.5.2.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of the credit line provided when multiple credit lines may be provided.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **CreditLineType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		115

6.1.5.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of the credit line, as published in an external purpose code list.

Datatype: ["ExternalCreditLineType1Code"](#) on page 335

6.1.5.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of the credit line, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: ["Max35Text"](#) on page 352

6.1.5.2.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the credit line.

Impacted by: [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.5.2.4 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the credit line provided when multiple credit lines may be provided.

Date <Dt> contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

6.1.5.3 CashBalance8

Definition: Set of elements used to define the balance details.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		116
	CreditLine <CdtLine>	[0..*]	±		117
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	117
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		118
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		118

Constraints

- **ForwardBalanceAndAvailabilityRule**

If Type is equal to ForwardAvailable, Availability is not allowed.

6.1.5.3.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the nature of a balance.

Type <Tp> contains the following elements (see ["BalanceType13"](#) on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			114
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		114
	SubType <SubTp>	[0..1]			114
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		114

6.1.5.3.2 CreditLine <CdtLine>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the credit line.

CreditLine <CdtLine> contains the following elements (see ["CreditLine3"](#) on page 114 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		115
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			115
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		115
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		115
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	115
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		116

6.1.5.3.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the cash balance.

Impacted by: [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

Datatype: ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.5.3.4 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the balance is a credit or a debit balance.*Usage:* A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.*Datatype:* "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.1.5.3.5 Date <Dt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Indicates the date (and time) of the balance.**Date <Dt>** contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

6.1.5.3.6 Availability <Avlbt>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.*Usage:* This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.*Example:* When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).**Availability <Avlbt>** contains the following elements (see "CashAvailability1" on page 183 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			183
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		183
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		184
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	184
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184

6.1.6 Bank Transaction Code

6.1.6.1 BankTransactionCodeStructure4

Definition: Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		119
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			119
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		120
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		120

Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True
 /Domain Must be present
 Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

6.1.6.1.1 Domain <Domn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide the domain, the family and the sub-family of the bank transaction code, in a structured and hierarchical format.

Usage: If a specific family or sub-family code cannot be provided, the generic family code defined for the domain or the generic sub-family code defined for the family should be provided.

Domain <Domn> contains the following elements (see "[BankTransactionCodeStructure5](#)" on page 120 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		121
	Family <Fmly>	[1..1]	±		121

6.1.6.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Bank transaction code in a proprietary form, as defined by the issuer.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following **ProprietaryBankTransactionCodeStructure1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		120
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		120

6.1.6.1.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary bank transaction code to identify the underlying transaction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.6.1.2.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the proprietary bank transaction code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.6.2 BankTransactionCodeStructure6

Definition: Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		120
	SubFamilyCode <SubFmlyCd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		120

6.1.6.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the family within a domain.

Datatype: "ExternalBankTransactionFamily1Code" on page 333

6.1.6.2.2 SubFamilyCode <SubFmlyCd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the sub-product family within a specific family.

Datatype: "ExternalBankTransactionSubFamily1Code" on page 334

6.1.6.3 BankTransactionCodeStructure5

Definition: Set of elements used to identify the type or operations code of a transaction entry.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		121
	Family <Fmly>	[1..1]	±		121

6.1.6.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the business area of the underlying transaction.

Datatype: "ExternalBankTransactionDomain1Code" on page 333

6.1.6.3.2 Family <Fmly>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the family and the sub-family of the bank transaction code, within a specific domain, in a structured and hierarchical format.

Family <Fmly> contains the following elements (see "BankTransactionCodeStructure6" on page 120 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		120
	SubFamilyCode <SubFmlyCd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		120

6.1.7 Cash

6.1.7.1 CashDeposit1

Definition: Deposit of an amount of money defined in cash notes and/or coins.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NoteDenomination <NoteDnmtn>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	121
	NumberOfNotes <NbOfNotes>	[1..1]	Text		122
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	122

6.1.7.1.1 NoteDenomination <NoteDnmtn>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the note or coin denomination, including the currency, such as a 50 euro note.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 324

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.7.1.2 NumberOfNotes <NbOfNotes>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the number of notes of the same denomination in the deposit.

Datatype: "Max15NumericText" on page 351

6.1.7.1.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the total amount of money in the cash deposit, that is the note denomination times the number of notes.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 324

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.8 Cash Entry

6.1.8.1 EntryTransaction9

Definition: Identifies the underlying transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	References <Refs>	[0..1]			128
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		129
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		129
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>	[0..1]	Text		129
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		130
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		130
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	ProcessingIdentification <PrctlId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			131
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		131
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		132
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		132
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		132
	Availability <Avlby>	[0..*]	±		134
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	135
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		135
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		135
	RelatedParties <RltdPties>	[0..1]			136
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		137
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		137
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		137
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		138
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		138

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		138
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		139
	TradingParty <TradgPty>	[0..1]	±		139
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			139
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		140
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		140
	RelatedAgents <RltdAgt>	[0..1]			140
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		140
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		141
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		141
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		141
	IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>	[0..1]	±		141
	IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>	[0..1]	±		142
	IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>	[0..1]	±		142
	ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>	[0..1]	±		142
	DeliveringAgent <DlvrAgt>	[0..1]	±		143
	IssuingAgent <IssgAgt>	[0..1]	±		143
	SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>	[0..1]	±		143
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			144
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		144
	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		144
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			144
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		144
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		145
	Purpose <Purp>	[0..1]	±		145
	RelatedRemittanceInformation <RltdRmtInf>	[0..10]	±		145
	RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>	[0..1]	±		145
	RelatedDates <RltdDts>	[0..1]			146
	AcceptanceDateTime <AcptncDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		146
	TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		146
	TradeDate <TradDt>	[0..1]	Date		146

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		147
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		147
	EndDate <EndDt>	[0..1]	Date		147
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		147
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			147
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		147
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		147
	RelatedPrice <RltdPric>	[0..1]			148
{Or	DealPrice <DealPric>	[1..1]	±		148
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..*]			148
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		149
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	149
	RelatedQuantities <RltdQties>	[0..*]			149
{Or	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	±		149
Or	OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>	[1..1]	±		150
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]			150
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		150
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		150
	FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstmld>	[0..1]	±	C8, C9, C14, C15, C17	150
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]	±		151
	ReturnInformation <RtrInf>	[0..1]	±	C19	152
	CorporateAction <CorpActn>	[0..1]			153
	EventType <EvtTp>	[1..1]	Text		153
	EventIdentification <EvtId>	[1..1]	Text		153
	SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct>	[0..1]	±		154
	CashDeposit <CshDpst>	[0..*]	±		154
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]			154
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			157
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			158
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		159

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		159
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		159
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		159
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		159
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			160
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		160
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		160
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			160
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		161
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		161
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		161
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		161
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			161
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		162
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		163
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		163
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			163
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		163
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		164
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		164
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			165
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		165
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		165
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		165
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			165
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		166
	ManufacturerIdentification <Manfctrld>	[0..1]	Text		166
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		166
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		166

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		167
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		167
	Transaction <Tx>	[0..1]			167
{Or	Aggregated <Aggtd>	[1..1]			169
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		170
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		170
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			170
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		171
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		171
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]			171
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			171
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		172
Or}	Individual <Indv>	[1..1]			172
	ICCRRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			174
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		175
	AttendanceContext <AttdncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnvt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionChannel <TxChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttdntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		176
	AttendantLanguage <AttdntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		176
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
	FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		176
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			177
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		178
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
	RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		179
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			179
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		180
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		180
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		181
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		182
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		182
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		182
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		182
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		182
	AdditionalTransactionInformation <AddtlTxInf>	[0..1]	Text		182
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C21	183

6.1.8.1.1 References <Refs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides the identification of the underlying transaction.

References <Refs> contains the following **TransactionReferences3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		129
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		129
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		129
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		130
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		130
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	ProcessingIdentification <PrctlId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			131
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		131
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		132

6.1.8.1.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party of the underlying message.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.2 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.3 PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by a sending party, to unambiguously identify the payment information group within the message.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.4 InstructionIdentification <InstrId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by an instructing party for an instructed party, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

Usage: The instruction identification is a point to point reference that can be used between the instructing party and the instructed party to refer to the individual instruction. It can be included in several messages related to the instruction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.5 EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the transaction. This identification is passed on, unchanged, throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

Usage: The end-to-end identification can be used for reconciliation or to link tasks relating to the transaction. It can be included in several messages related to the transaction.

Usage: In case there are technical limitations to pass on multiple references, the end-to-end identification must be passed on throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.6 TransactionIdentification <TxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the first instructing agent, to unambiguously identify the transaction that is passed on, unchanged, throughout the entire interbank chain.

Usage: The transaction identification can be used for reconciliation, tracking or to link tasks relating to the transaction on the interbank level.

Usage: The instructing agent has to make sure that the transaction identification is unique for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.7 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.8 ChequeNumber <ChqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identifier for a cheque as assigned by the agent.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.9 ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

Usage: In case there are technical limitations to pass on multiple references, the end-to-end identification must be passed on throughout the entire end-to-end chain.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.10 AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the securities transaction as known by the securities account owner (or the instructing party managing the account).

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.11 AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the securities transaction as known by the securities account servicer.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.12 MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a securities transaction assigned by a market infrastructure other than a central securities depository, for example, Target2-Securities.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.13 ProcessingIdentification <PrcgId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the securities transaction assigned by the processor of the instruction other than the securities account owner, the securities account servicer and the market infrastructure.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.14 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Proprietary reference related to the underlying transaction.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following **ProprietaryReference1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		131
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		132

6.1.8.1.1.14.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identifies the type of reference reported.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.1.14.2 Reference <Ref>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary reference specification related to the underlying transaction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money in the cash transaction.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.8.1.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the transaction is a credit or a debit transaction.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.1.8.1.4 AmountDetails <AmtDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides detailed information on the original amount.

Usage: This component (on transaction level) should be used in case booking is for a single transaction and the original amount is different from the entry amount. It can also be used in case individual original amounts are provided in case of a batch or aggregate booking.

AmountDetails <AmtDtls> contains the following elements (see "AmountAndCurrencyExchange3" on page 96 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[0..1]			98
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	99
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			99
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	99
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	100
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		100
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		100
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		101
	TransactionAmount <TxAmt>	[0..1]			101
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	101
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			101
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	102
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		103
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		103
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		103
	CounterValueAmount <CntrValAmt>	[0..1]			103
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	104
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			104
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	105
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		106
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		106
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		106
	AnnouncedPostingAmount <AnncdPstngAmt>	[0..1]			106
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	107
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			107

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	108
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		109
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		109
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		109
	ProprietaryAmount <PrtryAmt>	[0..*]			109
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		110
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	110
	CurrencyExchange <CcyXchg>	[0..1]			110
	SourceCurrency <SrcCcy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	TargetCurrency <TrgtCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	UnitCurrency <UnitCcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	111
	ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[1..1]	Rate		112
	ContractIdentification <CtrctId>	[0..1]	Text		112
	QuotationDate <QtnDt>	[0..1]	DateTime		112

6.1.8.1.5 Availability <Avlbt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Indicates when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

Usage: This type of information is used in the US and is linked to particular instruments such as cheques.

Example: When a cheque is deposited, it will be booked on the deposit day, but the amount of money will only be accessible as of the indicated availability day (according to national banking regulations).

Availability <Avlbt> contains the following elements (see "[CashAvailability1](#)" on page 183 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			183
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		183
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		184
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	184
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184

6.1.8.1.6 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

Impacted by: C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule", C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"

BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd> contains the following elements (see "BankTransactionCodeStructure4" on page 119 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		119
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			119
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		120
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		120

Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True

/Domain Must be present

Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

6.1.8.1.7 Charges <Chrgs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the charges, pre-advised or included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component (on transaction level) can be used in case the booking is for a single transaction, and charges are included in the entry amount. It can also be used in case individual charge amounts are applied to individual transactions in case of a batch or aggregate amount booking.

Charges <Chrgs> contains the following elements (see "Charges4" on page 192 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	193
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		193

6.1.8.1.8 Interest <Intrst>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the interest amount included in the entry amount.

Usage: This component (on transaction level) can be used if the booking is for a single transaction, and interest amount is included in the entry amount. It can also be used if individual interest amounts are applied to individual transactions in the case of a batch or aggregate amount booking.

Interest <Intrst> contains the following elements (see "TransactionInterest4" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	238
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			239
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	240
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			241
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		241
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			242
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		242
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			242
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			243
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		243
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			244
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		245
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	245
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		245
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			246
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		246
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	246

6.1.8.1.9 RelatedParties <RltdPties>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to identify the parties related to the underlying transaction.

RelatedParties <RltdPties> contains the following **TransactionParties4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		137
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		137
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		137
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		138
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		138
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		138
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		139
	TradingParty <TradgPty>	[0..1]	±		139
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			139
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		140
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		140

6.1.8.1.9.1 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that initiated the payment that is reported in the entry.

InitiatingParty <InitgPty> contains one of the following elements (see ["Party35Choice"](#) on page 273 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		273
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		273

6.1.8.1.9.2 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains one of the following elements (see ["Party35Choice"](#) on page 273 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		273
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		273

6.1.8.1.9.3 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor.

DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount24](#)" on page 89 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		89
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		89
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	90
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		90

6.1.8.1.9.4 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains one of the following elements (see "[Party35Choice](#)" on page 273 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		273
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		273

6.1.8.1.9.5 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party to which an amount of money is due.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains one of the following elements (see "[Party35Choice](#)" on page 273 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		273
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		273

6.1.8.1.9.6 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry has been posted as a result of the payment transaction.

CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount24](#)" on page 89 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		89
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		89
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	90
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		90

6.1.8.1.9.7 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr> contains one of the following elements (see "[Party35Choice](#)" on page 273 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		273
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		273

6.1.8.1.9.8 TradingParty <TradgPty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that plays an active role in planning and executing the transactions that create or liquidate investments of the investors assets, or that move the investor's assets from one investment to another. A trading party is a trade instructor, an investment decision-maker, a post trade administrator, or a trader. In the context of treasury, it is the party that negotiates and executes the treasury transaction.

TradingParty <TradgPty> contains one of the following elements (see "[Party35Choice](#)" on page 273 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		273
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		273

6.1.8.1.9.9 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Proprietary party related to the underlying transaction.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following **ProprietaryParty4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		140
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		140

6.1.8.1.9.9.1 Type <Tp>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of proprietary party.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.8.1.9.9.2 Party <Pty>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Proprietary party.**Party <Pty>** contains one of the following elements (see "Party35Choice" on page 273 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		273
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		273

6.1.8.1.10 RelatedAgents <RltdAgts>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the agents related to the underlying transaction.**RelatedAgents <RltdAgts>** contains the following **TransactionAgents4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		140
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		141
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		141
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		141
	IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>	[0..1]	±		141
	IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>	[0..1]	±		142
	IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>	[0..1]	±		142
	ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>	[0..1]	±		142
	DeliveringAgent <DlvrAgt>	[0..1]	±		143
	IssuingAgent <IssgAgt>	[0..1]	±		143
	SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>	[0..1]	±		143
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			144
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		144
	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		144

6.1.8.1.10.1 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>*Presence:* [0..1]

Definition: Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

InstructingAgent <InstgAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.10.2 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

InstructedAgent <InstdAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.10.3 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.10.4 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.10.5 IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

Usage: If more than one intermediary agent is present, then IntermediaryAgent1 identifies the agent between the DebtorAgent and the IntermediaryAgent2.

IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1> contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5"](#) on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.10.6 IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

Usage: If more than two intermediary agents are present, then IntermediaryAgent2 identifies the agent between the IntermediaryAgent1 and the IntermediaryAgent3.

IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2> contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5"](#) on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.10.7 IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent between the debtor's agent and the creditor's agent.

Usage: If IntermediaryAgent3 is present, then it identifies the agent between the IntermediaryAgent 2 and the CreditorAgent.

IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3> contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5"](#) on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.10.8 ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that receives securities from the delivering agent at the place of settlement, such as central securities depository.

Can also be used in the context of treasury operations.

ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt> contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5"](#) on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.10.9 DeliveringAgent <DlvrgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that delivers securities to the receiving agent at the place of settlement, such as a central securities depository.

Can also be used in the context of treasury operations.

DeliveringAgent <DlvrgAgt> contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5"](#) on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.10.10 IssuingAgent <IssgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal entity that has the right to issue securities.

IssuingAgent <IssgAgt> contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5"](#) on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.10.11 SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Place where settlement of the securities takes place.

Usage: This is typed by a financial institution identification as this is the standard way to identify a securities settlement agent/central system.

SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc> contains the following elements (see ["BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5"](#) on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.10.12 Proprietary <Prtry>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Proprietary agent related to the underlying transaction.**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following **ProprietaryAgent3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		144
	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		144

6.1.8.1.10.12.1 Type <Tp>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of proprietary agent.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.8.1.10.12.2 Agent <Agt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Organisation established primarily to provide financial services.**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5](#)" on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.8.1.11 LocallInstrument <LclInstrm>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* User community specific instrument.*Usage:* This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.**LocallInstrument <LclInstrm>** contains one of the following **LocallInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		144
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		145

6.1.8.1.11.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.*Datatype:* "[ExternalLocallInstrument1Code](#)" on page 337

6.1.8.1.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.12 Purpose <Purp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage: Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Purpose <Purp> contains one of the following elements (see "Purpose2Choice" on page 267 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		268
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		268

6.1.8.1.13 RelatedRemittanceInformation <RltdRmtInf>

Presence: [0..10]

Definition: Provides information related to the handling of the remittance information by any of the agents in the transaction processing chain.

RelatedRemittanceInformation <RltdRmtInf> contains the following elements (see "RemittanceLocation4" on page 261 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RemittanceIdentification <RmtId>	[0..1]	Text		261
	RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>	[0..*]			261
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		262
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrcAdr>	[0..1]	Text		262
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			262
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		263
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		263

6.1.8.1.14 RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Structured information that enables the matching, that is reconciliation, of a payment with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an account receivable system.

RemittanceInformation <RmtInf> contains the following elements (see "RemittanceInformation15" on page 265 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		265
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		265

6.1.8.1.15 RelatedDates <RltdDts>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to identify the dates related to the underlying transactions.

RelatedDates <RltdDts> contains the following **TransactionDates3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AcceptanceDateTime <AcptncDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		146
	TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		146
	TradeDate <TradDt>	[0..1]	Date		146
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		147
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		147
	EndDate <EndDt>	[0..1]	Date		147
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		147
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			147
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		147
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		147

6.1.8.1.15.1 AcceptanceDateTime <AcptncDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Point in time when the payment order from the initiating party meets the processing conditions of the account servicing agent. This means that the account servicing agent has received the payment order and has applied checks such as authorisation, availability of funds.

Datatype: "ISODatetime" on page 346

6.1.8.1.15.2 TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies when an amount of money should have contractually been credited or debited the account versus when the amount of money was actually settled (debited/credited) on the cash account.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.8.1.15.3 TradeDate <TradDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the trade was executed.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.8.1.15.4 InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the amount of money ceases to be available to the agent that owes it and when the amount of money becomes available to the agent to which it is due.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.8.1.15.5 StartDate <StartDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Start date of the underlying transaction, such as a treasury transaction, an investment plan.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.8.1.15.6 EndDate <EndDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: End date of the underlying transaction, such as a treasury transaction, an investment plan.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.8.1.15.7 TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time of the underlying transaction.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 346

6.1.8.1.15.8 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Proprietary date related to the underlying transaction.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following **ProprietaryDate3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		147
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		147

6.1.8.1.15.8.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of date.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.15.8.2 Date <Dt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date in ISO format.

Date <Dt> contains one of the following elements (see "DateAndDateTime2Choice" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

6.1.8.1.16 RelatedPrice <RltdPric>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to identify the price information related to the underlying transaction.

RelatedPrice <RltdPric> contains one of the following **TransactionPrice4Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	DealPrice <DealPric>	[1..1]	±		148
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..*]			148
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		149
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	149

6.1.8.1.16.1 DealPrice <DealPric>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the price of the traded financial instrument.

This is the deal price of the individual trade transaction.

If there is only one trade transaction for the execution of the trade, then the deal price could equal the executed trade price (unless, for example, the price includes commissions or rounding, or some other factor has been applied to the deal price or the executed trade price, or both).

DealPrice <DealPric> contains the following elements (see "Price7" on page 301 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		301
	Value <Val>	[1..1]	±		301

6.1.8.1.16.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Proprietary price specification related to the underlying transaction.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following **ProprietaryPrice2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		149
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	149

6.1.8.1.16.2.1 Type <Tp>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of price.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.8.1.16.2.2 Price <Pric>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Proprietary price specification related to the underlying transaction.*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.8.1.17 RelatedQuantities <RltdQties>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the related quantities, such as securities, in the underlying transaction.

RelatedQuantities <RltdQties> contains one of the following **TransactionQuantities2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	±		149
Or	OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>	[1..1]	±		150
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]			150
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		150
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		150

6.1.8.1.17.1 Quantity <Qty>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the quantity (such as securities) in the underlying transaction.

Quantity <Qty> contains one of the following elements (see ["FinancialInstrumentQuantityChoice"](#) on page 302 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Unit <Unit>	[1..1]	Quantity		302
Or	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		302
Or}	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		303

6.1.8.1.17.2 OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Face amount and amortised value of security.

OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt> contains the following elements (see ["OriginalAndCurrentQuantities1"](#) on page 303 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		303
	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		303

6.1.8.1.17.3 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary quantities specification defined in the underlying transaction.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following **ProprietaryQuantity1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		150
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		150

6.1.8.1.17.3.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identifies the type of proprietary quantity reported.

Datatype: ["Max35Text"](#) on page 352

6.1.8.1.17.3.2 Quantity <Qty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the proprietary quantity in free format.

Datatype: ["Max35Text"](#) on page 352

6.1.8.1.18 FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstrmId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a security, as assigned under a formal or proprietary identification scheme.

Impacted by: C8 "DescriptionPresenceRule", C9 "DescriptionUsageRule", C14 "ISINGuideline", C15 "ISINPresenceRule", C17 "OtherIdentificationPresenceRule"

FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstrmId> contains the following elements (see "SecurityIdentification19" on page 206 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ISIN <ISIN>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		207
	OtherIdentification <OthrlId>	[0..*]			207
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		207
	Suffix <Sfx>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		208
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		208

Constraints

- **DescriptionPresenceRule**

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

```
On Condition
  /Description is absent
Following Must be True
  /ISIN Must be present
Or
  /OtherIdentification[*] Must be present
```

- **DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

- **ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

- **ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

```
On Condition
  /ISIN is absent
Following Must be True
  /OtherIdentification[*] Must be present
Or
  /Description Must be present
```

- **OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

```
On Condition
  /OtherIdentification[*] is absent
Following Must be True
  /ISIN Must be present
Or
  /Description Must be present
```

6.1.8.1.19 Tax <Tax>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the tax.

Tax <Tax> contains the following elements (see "TaxInformation6" on page 306 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]			307
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		307
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		308
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		308
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]			308
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		308
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		308
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		308
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			308
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		309
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		309
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZn>	[0..1]	Text		309
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		309
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		309
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	309
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	310
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		310
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		310
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		310

6.1.8.1.20 ReturnInformation <RtrlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides the return information.

Impacted by: C19 "ReturnReasonRule"

ReturnInformation <RtrInf> contains the following elements (see "PaymentReturnReason3" on page 303 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnlBkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	304
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		304
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			305
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		305
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		305
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		305

Constraints

- **ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

On Condition

/Reason/Code is equal to value 'NARR'

And /Reason is present

And /Reason/Code is present

Following Must be True

/AdditionalInformation[*] Must be present

6.1.8.1.21 CorporateAction <CorpActn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to identify the underlying corporate action.

CorporateAction <CorpActn> contains the following **CorporateAction9** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EventType <EvtTp>	[1..1]	Text		153
	EventIdentification <EvtId>	[1..1]	Text		153

6.1.8.1.21.1 EventType <EvtTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of corporate action event, in a free-text format.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.21.2 EventIdentification <EvtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a corporate action assigned by an official central body/entity within a given market.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.22 SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct>*Presence:* [0..1]

Definition: Safekeeping or investment account. A safekeeping account is an account on which a securities entry is made. An investment account is an account between an investor(s) and a fund manager or a fund. The account can contain holdings in any investment fund or investment fund class managed (or distributed) by the fund manager, within the same fund family.

SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct> contains the following elements (see "[SecuritiesAccount19](#)" on page 90 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		91
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		91
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		91

6.1.8.1.23 CashDeposit <CshDpst>*Presence:* [0..*]

Definition: Provides the details of a cash deposit for an amount of money in cash notes and/or coins.

CashDeposit <CshDpst> contains the following elements (see "[CashDeposit1](#)" on page 121 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NoteDenomination <NoteDnmtn>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	121
	NumberOfNotes <NbOfNotes>	[1..1]	Text		122
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C1, C7	122

6.1.8.1.24 CardTransaction <CardTx>*Presence:* [0..1]

Definition: Provides the data related to the card (number, scheme), terminal (number, identification) and transactional data used to uniquely identify a card transaction.

CardTransaction <CardTx> contains the following **CardTransaction16** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			157
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			158
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		159
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		159
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		159
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		159
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		159
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			160
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		160
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		160
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			160
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		161
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		161
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		161
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		161
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			161
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		162
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		163
	GroupIdentification <GrpId>	[0..1]	Text		163
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			163
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		163
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrhdldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		164
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		164
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			165
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		165
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		165
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		165
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			165

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		166
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		166
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		166
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		166
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		167
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		167
	Transaction <Tx>	[0..1]			167
{Or	Aggregated <Aggtd>	[1..1]			169
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		170
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		170
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			170
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		171
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		171
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]			171
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			171
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		172
Or}	Individual <Indv>	[1..1]			172
	ICCRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			174
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	CardholderPresent <CrhdldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		175
	AttendanceContext <AttdncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnv>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionChannel <TxChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttdntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		176
	AttendantLanguage <AttdntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		176
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FallbackIndicator <FllbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		176
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			177
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		178
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
	RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		179
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			179
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		180
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		180
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		181
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		182
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		182
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		182
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		182
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		182

6.1.8.1.24.1 Card <Card>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Electronic money product that provides the cardholder with a portable and specialised computer device, which typically contains a microprocessor.

Card <Card> contains the following **PaymentCard4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			158
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		159
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		159
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		159
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		159
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		159
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			160
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		160
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		160
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			160
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		161
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		161
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		161
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		161

6.1.8.1.24.1.1 PlainCardData <PlainCardData>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Sensitive data associated with the card performing the transaction.

PlainCardData <PlainCardData> contains the following **PlainCardData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		159
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		159
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		159
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		159
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		159
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			160
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		160
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		160
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			160
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		161

6.1.8.1.24.1.1.1 PAN <PAN>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Primary Account Number (PAN) of the card, or card number.

Datatype: "Min8Max28NumericText" on page 354

6.1.8.1.24.1.1.2 CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identify a card inside a set of cards with the same card number (PAN).

Datatype: "Min2Max3NumericText" on page 353

6.1.8.1.24.1.1.3 EffectiveDate <FctvDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date as from which the card can be used.

Datatype: "ISOYearMonth" on page 354

6.1.8.1.24.1.1.4 ExpiryDate <XpryDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Expiry date of the card.

Datatype: "ISOYearMonth" on page 354

6.1.8.1.24.1.1.5 ServiceCode <SvcCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Services attached to the card, as defined in ISO 7813.

Datatype: "Exact3NumericText" on page 350

6.1.8.1.24.1.1.6 TrackData <TrckData>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Magnetic track or equivalent payment card data.**TrackData <TrckData>** contains the following **TrackData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		160
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		160

6.1.8.1.24.1.1.6.1 TrackNumber <TrckNb>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Track number of the card.*Datatype:* "Exact1NumericText" on page 350**6.1.8.1.24.1.1.6.2 TrackValue <TrckVal>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Card track content or equivalent.*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 351**6.1.8.1.24.1.1.7 CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) associated with the card performing the transaction.**CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>** contains the following **CardSecurityInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		161

6.1.8.1.24.1.1.7.1 CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) management associated with the transaction.*Datatype:* "CSCManagement1Code" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
PRST	CSCPresent	Card security code present.
BYPS	CSCByPass	Card security code by-passed or not provided by the merchant.
UNRD	CSCUnread	Card security code unreadable.
NCSC	NoCSC	No card security code imprint.

6.1.8.1.24.1.1.7.2 CSCValue <CSCVal>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Card security code (CSC).

Datatype: "Min3Max4NumericText" on page 353

6.1.8.1.24.1.2 CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Country code assigned to the card by the card issuer.

Datatype: "Exact3NumericText" on page 350

6.1.8.1.24.1.3 CardBrand <CardBrnd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Brand name of the card.

CardBrand <CardBrnd> contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification1" on page 208 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		208
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		208
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		208

6.1.8.1.24.1.4 AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Additional card issuer specific data.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 353

6.1.8.1.24.2 POI <POI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Physical or logical card payment terminal containing software and hardware components.

POI <POI> contains the following **PointOfInteraction1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		162
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		163
	GroupIdentification <GrpId>	[0..1]	Text		163
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			163
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		163
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		164
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		164
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			165
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		165
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		165
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		165
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			165
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		166
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		166
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		166
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		166
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		167
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvINb>	[0..*]	Text		167

6.1.8.1.24.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of the POI (Point Of Interaction) for the acquirer or its agent.

Identification <Id> contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification32](#)" on page 210 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		210
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		210
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		211
	ShortName <ShrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		211

6.1.8.1.24.2.2 SystemName <SysNm>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Common name assigned by the acquirer to the POI system.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 353**6.1.8.1.24.2.3 GroupIdentification <Grpld>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identifier assigned by the merchant identifying a set of POI terminals performing some categories of transactions.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.8.1.24.2.4 Capabilities <Cpblties>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.**Capabilities <Cpblties>** contains the following **PointOfInteractionCapabilities1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		163
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		164
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		164
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			165
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		165
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		165
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		165

6.1.8.1.24.2.4.1 CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Card reading capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.*Datatype:* "CardDataReading1Code" on page 328

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.

CodeName	Name	Definition
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

6.1.8.1.24.2.4.2 CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Cardholder verification capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

Datatype: "CardholderVerificationCapability1Code" on page 328

CodeName	Name	Definition
MNSG	ManualSignature	Manual signature verification.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	Online PIN (Personal Identification Number).
FCPN	OfflinePINCLEAR	Offline PIN in clear (Personal Identification Number).
FEPN	OfflinePINEncrypted	Offline PIN encrypted (Personal Identification Number).
FDSG	OfflineDigitalSignature	Offline digital signature analysis.
FBIO	OfflineBiometrics	Offline biometrics.
MNVR	ManualVerification	Other manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
FBIG	OfflineBiographics	Offline biographics.
APKI	AccountDigitalSignature	Account based digital signature.
PKIS	PKISignature	PKI (Public Key Infrastructure) based digital signature.
CHDT	CardholderData	Cardholder authentication data.
SCEC	SecureElectronicCommerce	Three domain secure (three domain secure authentication of the cardholder).

6.1.8.1.24.2.4.3 OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: On-line and off-line capabilities of the POI.

Datatype: "OnLineCapability1Code" on page 340

CodeName	Name	Definition
OFLN	OffLine	Off-line only capable.
ONLN	OnLine	On-line only capable.
SMON	SemiOffLine	Off-line capable with possible on-line requests to the acquirer.

6.1.8.1.24.2.4.4 DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Capabilities of the display components performing the transaction.

DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties> contains the following **DisplayCapabilities1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		165
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		165

6.1.8.1.24.2.4.4.1 DisplayType <DispTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of display (for example merchant or cardholder).

Datatype: ["UserInterface2Code" on page 346](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
MDSP	MerchantDisplay	Merchant display or interface.
CDSP	CardholderDisplay	Cardholder display or interface.

6.1.8.1.24.2.4.4.2 NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Number of lines of the display component.

Datatype: ["Max3NumericText" on page 352](#)

6.1.8.1.24.2.4.4.3 LineWidth <LineWidth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Number of columns of the display component.

Datatype: ["Max3NumericText" on page 352](#)

6.1.8.1.24.2.4.5 PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number of columns of the printer component.

Datatype: ["Max3NumericText" on page 352](#)

6.1.8.1.24.2.5 Component <Cmpnt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Data related to a component of the POI performing the transaction.

Component <Cmpnt> contains the following **PointOfInteractionComponent1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		166
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		166
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		166
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		166
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		167
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		167

6.1.8.1.24.2.5.1 POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of component belonging to a POI Terminal.

Datatype: "POIComponentType1Code" on page 341

CodeName	Name	Definition
SOFT	Soft	Payment or other software application.
EMVK	EMVKernel	EMV application kernel (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
EMVO	EMVLevel1	EMV physical interface (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
MRIT	MerchantInterface	Merchant interface.
CHIT	CardholderInterface	Cardholder Interface.
SECM	SecureModule	Security module.
PEDV	PINEntryDevice	Personal identification number (or PIN) entry device (PED).

6.1.8.1.24.2.5.2 ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the software, hardware or system provider of the POI component.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.24.2.5.3 Model <Mdl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a model of POI component for a given manufacturer.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.24.2.5.4 VersionNumber <VrsnNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Version of component belonging to a given model.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 351

6.1.8.1.24.2.5.5 SerialNumber <SrINb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Serial number of a component.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.24.2.5.6 ApprovalNumber <ApprvINb>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique approval number for a component, delivered by a certification body.

Usage: More than one approval number could be present, when assigned by different bodies. The certification body identification must be provided within the approval number (for example at the beginning of the value).

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 353

6.1.8.1.24.3 Transaction <Tx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Card transaction details, which can be either globalised by the acquirer or individual transaction.

Transaction <Tx> contains one of the following **CardTransaction3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Aggregated <Aggtd>	[1..1]			169
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		170
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		170
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			170
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		171
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		171
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]			171
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			171
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		172
Or}	Individual <Indv>	[1..1]			172
	ICCRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			174
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	CardholderPresent <CrhldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		175
	AttendanceContext <AttdncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnv>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionChannel <TxChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttdntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		176
	AttendantLanguage <AttdntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		176
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
	FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		176
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			177
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		178

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
	RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		179
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			179
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		180
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		180
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		181
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		182
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		182
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		182
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		182

6.1.8.1.24.3.1 Aggregated <Aggtd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Card transaction details, based on card transaction aggregated data performed by the card acquirer.

Aggregated <Aggtd> contains the following **CardAggregated2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		170
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		170
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcnccltnId>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			170
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		171
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		171
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]			171
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			171
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		172

6.1.8.1.24.3.1.1 AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Service in addition to the main service.*Datatype:* "CardPaymentServiceType2Code" on page 329

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

6.1.8.1.24.3.1.2 TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Category code conform to ISO 18245, related to the type of services or goods the merchant provides for the transaction.*Datatype:* "ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code" on page 334**6.1.8.1.24.3.1.3 SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique identification of the sales reconciliation period between the acceptor and the acquirer. This identification might be linked to the identification of the settlement for further verification by the merchant.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.8.1.24.3.1.4 SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Range of sequence numbers on which the globalisation applies.**SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>** contains the following **CardSequenceNumberRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		171
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		171

6.1.8.1.24.3.1.4.1 FirstTransaction <FrstTx>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* CardSequenceNumberRange1: FirstTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.8.1.24.3.1.4.2 LastTransaction <LastTx>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* CardSequenceNumberRange1: LastTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.8.1.24.3.1.5 TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date range on which the globalisation applies.**TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>** contains one of the following **DateOrDateTimePeriod1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			171
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		172

6.1.8.1.24.3.1.5.1 Date <Dt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Period expressed with dates.**Date <Dt>** contains the following **DatePeriod2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		171

6.1.8.1.24.3.1.5.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Start date of the range.*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 346**6.1.8.1.24.3.1.5.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* End date of the range.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.8.1.24.3.1.5.2 DateTime <DtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Period expressed a dates and times.

DateTime <DtTm> contains the following elements (see "DateTimePeriod1" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

6.1.8.1.24.3.2 Individual <Indv>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Card transaction details for the individual transaction, as recorded at the POI (point of interaction).

Individual <Indv> contains the following **CardIndividualTransaction2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ICCRRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			174
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		175
	AttendanceContext <AttdncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnv<	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionChannel <TxChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttdntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		176
	AttendantLanguage <AttdntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		176
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
	FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		176
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			177
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		178
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
	RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		179
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			179
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		180
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		180
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		181
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		182
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		182
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		182

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		182

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.1 ICCRelatedData <ICCRltdData>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Data related to an integrated circuit card application.

Datatype: "Max1025Text" on page 350

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2 PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Context of the card payment transaction.

PaymentContext <PmtCntxt> contains the following **PaymentContext3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		175
	AttendanceContext <AttdncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnvnt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionChannel <TxChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttdntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		176
	AttendantLanguage <AttdntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		176
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
	FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		176
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			177
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.1 CardPresent <CardPres>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the transaction has been initiated by a card physically present or not.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.2 CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the transaction has been initiated in presence of the cardholder or not.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.3 OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: On-line or off-line context of the transaction.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.4 AttendanceContext <AttnDncCntxt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Human attendance at the POI location during the transaction.

Datatype: ["AttendanceContext1Code"](#) on page 327

CodeName	Name	Definition
ATTD	Attended	Attended payment, with an attendant.
SATT	SemiAttended	Semi-attended, including self checkout. An attendant supervises several payment, and could be called to help the cardholder.
UATT	Unattended	Unattended payment, no attendant present.

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.5 TransactionEnvironment <TxEnv>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates the environment of the transaction.

Datatype: ["TransactionEnvironment1Code"](#) on page 344

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant environment.
PRIV	Private	Private environment.
PUBL	Public	Public environment.

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.6 TransactionChannel <TxChanl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the type of the communication channels used by the cardholder to the acceptor system.

Datatype: ["TransactionChannel1Code"](#) on page 344

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	MailOrder	Mail order.
TLPH	TelephoneOrder	Telephone order.
ECOM	ElectronicCommerce	Electronic commerce.
TVPY	TelevisionPayment	Payment on television.

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.7 AttendantMessageCapable <AttndntMsgCpbl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether a message can be sent or not on an attendant display (attendant display present or not).

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.8 AttendantLanguage <AttndntLang>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Language used to display messages to the attendant.

Datatype: ["ISO2ALanguageCode"](#) on page 340

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.9 CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Entry mode of the card data.

Datatype: ["CardDataReading1Code"](#) on page 328

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.10 FallbackIndicator <FilbckInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicator of a card entry mode fallback.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.11 AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Method used to authenticate a cardholder.

AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd> contains the following **CardholderAuthentication2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.11.1 AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Method used to authenticate the cardholder.

Datatype: "AuthenticationMethod1Code" on page 327

CodeName	Name	Definition
UKNW	UnknownMethod	Authentication method is performed unknown.
BYPS	Bypass	Authentication bypassed by the merchant.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	On-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
FPIN	OfflinePIN	Off-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
CPSG	SignatureCapture	Electronic signature capture (handwritten signature).
PPSG	PaperSignature	Handwritten paper signature.
MANU	ManualVerification	Manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
MERC	MerchantAuthentication	Merchant-related authentication.
SCRT	SecureCertificate	Electronic commerce transaction secured with the X.509 certificate of a customer.
SNCT	SecureNoCertificate	Secure electronic transaction without cardholder certificate.
SCNL	SecuredChannel	Channel-encrypted transaction.

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.2.11.2 AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Entity or object in charge of verifying the cardholder authenticity.

Datatype: "AuthenticationEntity1Code" on page 327

CodeName	Name	Definition
ICCD	ICC	Application in the chip card (Integrated Circuit Card), for instance an offline PIN verification.
AGNT	AuthorisedAgent	Authorisation agent of the issuer.
MERC	Merchant	Merchant (for example signature verification by the attendant).

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.3 AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Service in addition to the main service.

Datatype: "CardPaymentServiceType2Code" on page 329

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.4 TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Category code conform to ISO 18245, related to the type of services or goods the merchant provides for the transaction.

This element is also known as the MerchantCategoryCode.

Datatype: "ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code" on page 334

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.5 SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcnclntld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification of the sales reconciliation period between the acceptor and the acquirer. This identification might be linked to the identification of the settlement for further verification by the merchant.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.6 SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique reference of the sales as provided by the merchant.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.8.1.24.3.2.7 RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Reason for representment of a card transaction.*Datatype:* "ExternalRePresentmentReason1Code" on page 338**6.1.8.1.24.3.2.8 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Sequential number of the card transaction, as assigned by the POI (Point of Interaction).*Usage:* The sequential number is increased incrementally for each transaction.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.8.1.24.3.2.9 TransactionIdentification <TxId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of the transaction assigned by the POI (Point Of Interaction).**TransactionIdentification <TxId>** contains the following elements (see "TransactionIdentifier1" on page 213 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		213
	TransactionReference <TxRef>	[1..1]	Text		213

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.10 Product <Pdct>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Product purchased with the transaction.**Product <Pdct>** contains the following **Product2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		180
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		180
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		181
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		182
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		182

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.10.1 ProductCode <PdctCd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Product code of the item purchased.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 353**6.1.8.1.24.3.2.10.2 UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unit of measure of the item purchased.*Datatype:* "UnitOfMeasure1Code" on page 344

CodeName	Name	Definition
PIEC	Piece	Standard length of cloth, wallpaper, as an item for sale or amount of a substance.
TONS	Ton	Measure of weight, in Britain 2240lb (long ton)and in the US 2000lb (short ton).
FOOT	Foot	Unit of length equal to 1/3 yard.
GBGA	GBGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
USGA	USGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
GRAM	Gram	Unit of measure that is equal to a 1,000th of a kilo.
INCH	Inch	Measure of length equal to 2.54 cm.
KILO	Kilogram	Basic unit of mass in the SI system, 1000 grams.
PUND	Pound	Unit of weight equal to 0.454 kilograms.
METR	Metre	Unit of length in the metric system, equal to 39.37 inches.
CMET	Centimetre	Unit of measure that is equal to one hundredth of a metre.
MMET	Millimetre	Unit of measure that is a thousandth of one metre.
LITR	Litre	Unit of volume that is equal to a thousand cubic centimetres.
CELI	Centilitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one hundredth of a litre.
MILI	MilliLitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one thousandth of a litre.
GBOU	GBOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.
USOU	USOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.
GBQA	GBQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.
USQA	USQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.

CodeName	Name	Definition
GBPI	GBPInt	Unit of volume that is equal to 568 cubic centimetres.
USPI	USPInt	Unit of volume that is equal to 473 cubic centimetres.
MILE	Mile	Unit of length equal to 1, 760 yards.
KMET	Kilometre	Unit of measure that is equal to 1, 000 meters.
YARD	Yard	Unit of length equal to 3 feet or 0.9144 metre.
SQKI	SquareKilometre	Measure of a surface, one kilometre by one kilometre.
HECT	Hectare	Unit of measure that is equal to 10, 000 square meters.
ARES	Are	Unit of measure equal to a 100 square meters.
SMET	SquareMetre	Measure of a surface, one metre by one metre.
SCMT	SquareCentimetre	Measure of a surface, one centimetre by one centimetre.
SMIL	SquareMillimetre	Measure of a surface, one millimetre by one millimetre.
SQMI	SquareMile	Measure of a surface, one mile by one mile.
SQYA	SquareYard	Measure of a surface, one yard by one yard.
SQFO	SquareFoot	Measure of a surface, one foot by one foot.
SQIN	SquareInch	Measure of a surface, one inch by one inch.
ACRE	Acre	Unit of measure equal to 4, 840 square yards.

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.10.3 ProductQuantity <PdctQty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Product quantity.

Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 348

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.10.4 UnitPrice <UnitPric>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Price per unit of product.

Datatype: "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.10.5 ProductAmount <PdctAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Monetary value of purchased product.

Datatype: "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.10.6 TaxType <TaxTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information on tax paid on the product.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.10.7 AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Additional information related to the product.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.11 ValidationDate <VldtnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date when the deposit was validated by the financial institution that collected the cash.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.8.1.24.3.2.12 ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Sequential number of the validation of the cash deposit.

Usage: The sequential number is increased incrementally for each transaction.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.1.24.4 PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Prepaid account for the transfer or loading of an amount of money.

PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount24" on page 89 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		89
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		89
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	90
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		90

6.1.8.1.25 AdditionalTransactionInformation <AddtlTxInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the transaction.

Datatype: "Max500Text" on page 353

6.1.8.1.26 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C21 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 264 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		264
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		264

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

6.1.8.2 CashAvailability1

Definition: Indicates when the amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and start generating interest.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			183
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		183
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		184
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	184
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184

6.1.8.2.1 Date <Dt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates when the amount of money will become available.

Date <Dt> contains one of the following **CashAvailabilityDate1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		183
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		184

6.1.8.2.1.1 NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates the number of float days attached to the balance.

Datatype: "Max15PlusSignedNumericText" on page 351

6.1.8.2.1.2 ActualDate <ActIDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identifies the actual availability date.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.8.2.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identifies the available amount.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.8.2.3 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the availability balance is a credit or a debit balance.

Usage: A zero balance is considered to be a credit balance.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.1.8.3 EntryDetails8

Definition: Identifies the underlying transaction(s) and/or batched entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Batch <Btch>	[0..1]			185
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		185
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>	[0..1]	Text		185
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxs>	[0..1]	Text		185
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	186
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	TransactionDetails <TxDtIs>	[0..*]	±		186

6.1.8.3.1 Batch <Btch>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on batched transactions.

Batch <Btch> contains the following **BatchInformation2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		185
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>	[0..1]	Text		185
	NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxs>	[0..1]	Text		185
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	186
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186

6.1.8.3.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the sending party, to unambiguously identify the batch of transactions.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.3.1.2 PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInflId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by a sending party, to unambiguously identify the payment information group within the message.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.8.3.1.3 NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number of individual transactions included in the batch.

Datatype: "Max15NumericText" on page 351

6.1.8.3.1.4 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money reported in the batch entry.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.8.3.1.5 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the batch entry is a credit or a debit entry.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.1.8.3.2 TransactionDetails <TxDtIs>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides information on the underlying transaction(s).

TransactionDetails <TxDtls> contains the following elements (see "EntryTransaction9" on page 122 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	References <Refs>	[0..1]			128
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		129
	AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		129
	PaymentInformationIdentification <PmtInfId>	[0..1]	Text		129
	InstructionIdentification <InstrId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	EndToEndIdentification <EndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		130
	ChequeNumber <ChqNb>	[0..1]	Text		130
	ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		130
	AccountOwnerTransactionIdentification <AcctOwnrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	AccountServicerTransactionIdentification <AcctSvcrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	MarketInfrastructureTransactionIdentification <MktInfrstrctrTxId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	ProcessingIdentification <PrctlId>	[0..1]	Text		131
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			131
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		131
	Reference <Ref>	[1..1]	Text		132
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	132
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		132
	AmountDetails <AmtDtls>	[0..1]	±		132
	Availability <Avlby>	[0..*]	±		134
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	135
	Charges <Chrgs>	[0..1]	±		135
	Interest <Intrst>	[0..1]	±		135
	RelatedParties <RltdPties>	[0..1]			136
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		137
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		137
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		137

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		138
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		138
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		138
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		139
	TradingParty <TradgPty>	[0..1]	±		139
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			139
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		140
	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		140
	RelatedAgents <RltdAgts>	[0..1]			140
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		140
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		141
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		141
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		141
	IntermediaryAgent1 <IntrmyAgt1>	[0..1]	±		141
	IntermediaryAgent2 <IntrmyAgt2>	[0..1]	±		142
	IntermediaryAgent3 <IntrmyAgt3>	[0..1]	±		142
	ReceivingAgent <RcvgAgt>	[0..1]	±		142
	DeliveringAgent <DlvrgAgt>	[0..1]	±		143
	IssuingAgent <IssgAgt>	[0..1]	±		143
	SettlementPlace <SttlmPlc>	[0..1]	±		143
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			144
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		144
	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		144
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			144
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		144
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		145
	Purpose <Purp>	[0..1]	±		145
	RelatedRemittanceInformation <RltdRmtInf>	[0..10]	±		145
	RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>	[0..1]	±		145
	RelatedDates <RltdDts>	[0..1]			146
	AcceptanceDateTime <AccptncDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		146

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TradeActivityContractualSettlementDate <TradActvtyCtrctlSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		146
	TradeDate <TradDt>	[0..1]	Date		146
	InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		147
	StartDate <StartDt>	[0..1]	Date		147
	EndDate <EndDt>	[0..1]	Date		147
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		147
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..*]			147
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		147
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	±		147
	RelatedPrice <RltdPric>	[0..1]			148
{Or	DealPrice <DealPric>	[1..1]	±		148
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..*]			148
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		149
	Price <Pric>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	149
	RelatedQuantities <RltdQties>	[0..*]			149
{Or	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	±		149
Or	OriginalAndCurrentFaceAmount <OrgnlAndCurFaceAmt>	[1..1]	±		150
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]			150
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	Text		150
	Quantity <Qty>	[1..1]	Text		150
	FinancialInstrumentIdentification <FinInstrmId>	[0..1]	±	C8, C9, C14, C15, C17	150
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]	±		151
	ReturnInformation <RtrInf>	[0..1]	±	C19	152
	CorporateAction <CorpActn>	[0..1]			153
	EventType <EvtTp>	[1..1]	Text		153
	EventIdentification <EvtId>	[1..1]	Text		153
	SafekeepingAccount <SfkpgAcct>	[0..1]	±		154
	CashDeposit <CshDpst>	[0..*]	±		154
	CardTransaction <CardTx>	[0..1]			154

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			157
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			158
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		159
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		159
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		159
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		159
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		159
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			160
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		160
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		160
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			160
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		160
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		161
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		161
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		161
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		161
	POI <POI/>	[0..1]			161
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		162
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		163
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		163
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			163
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		163
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		164
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		164
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			165
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		165
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		165
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		165
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			165
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		166

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		166
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		166
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		166
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		167
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		167
	Transaction <Tx>	[0..1]			167
{Or	Aggregated <Aggtd>	[1..1]			169
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		170
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		170
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		170
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			170
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		171
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		171
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]			171
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			171
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		172
Or}	Individual <Indv>	[1..1]			172
	ICCRRelatedData <ICCRltdData>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PaymentContext <PmtCntxt>	[0..1]			174
	CardPresent <CardPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	CardholderPresent <CrdhldrPres>	[0..1]	Indicator		174
	OnLineContext <OnLineCntxt>	[0..1]	Indicator		175
	AttendanceContext <AttdncCntxt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionEnvironment <TxEnvnt>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	TransactionChannel <TxChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		175
	AttendantMessageCapable <AttdntMsgCpbl>	[0..1]	Indicator		176
	AttendantLanguage <AttdntLang>	[0..1]	CodeSet		176
	CardDataEntryMode <CardDataNtryMd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
	FallbackIndicator <FlbckInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		176

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[0..1]			177
	AuthenticationMethod <AuthntcnMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	AuthenticationEntity <AuthntcnNtty>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		178
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		178
	SaleReferenceNumber <SaleRefNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
	RePresentmentReason <RePresntmntRsn>	[0..1]	CodeSet		179
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
	TransactionIdentification <TxId>	[0..1]	±		179
	Product <Pdct>	[0..1]			179
	ProductCode <PdctCd>	[1..1]	Text		180
	UnitOfMeasure <UnitOfMeasr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		180
	ProductQuantity <PdctQty>	[0..1]	Quantity		181
	UnitPrice <UnitPric>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	ProductAmount <PdctAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		181
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		182
	AdditionalProductInformation <AddtlPdctInf>	[0..1]	Text		182
	ValidationDate <VldtnDt>	[0..1]	Date		182
	ValidationSequenceNumber <VldtnSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		182
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		182
	AdditionalTransactionInformation <AddtlTxInf>	[0..1]	Text		182
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C21	183

6.1.9 Charge

6.1.9.1 Charges4

Definition: Provides further details on the charges related to the payment transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	193
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		193

6.1.9.1.1 TotalChargesAndTaxAmount <TtlChrgsAndTaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total of all charges and taxes applied to the entry.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.9.1.2 Record <Rcrd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides details of the individual charges record.

Record <Rcrd> contains the following elements (see "ChargesRecord2" on page 193 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	194
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		194
	ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		195
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			195
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		195
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		195
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		195
	Bearer 	[0..1]	CodeSet		196
	Agent <Agt>	[0..1]	±		196
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			196
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		197
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		197
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	197

6.1.9.2 ChargesRecord2

Definition: Provides further individual record details on the charges related to the payment transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	194
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		194
	ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		195
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			195
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		195
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		195
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		195
	Bearer 	[0..1]	CodeSet		196
	Agent <Agt>	[0..1]	±		196
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			196
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		197
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		197
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	197

6.1.9.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Transaction charges to be paid by the charge bearer.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.9.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the charges amount is a credit or a debit amount.

Usage: A zero amount is considered to be a credit.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.1.9.2.3 ChargeIncludedIndicator <ChrgInclInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the charge should be included in the amount or is added as pre-advice.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "[ChargeIncludedIndicator](#)" on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* Included
- *Meaning When False:* Pre-advised

6.1.9.2.4 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of charge.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **ChargeType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		195
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		195

6.1.9.2.4.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Charge type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "[ExternalChargeType1Code](#)" on page 334

6.1.9.2.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of charge in a proprietary form, as defined by the issuer.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification3](#)" on page 211 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		212
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		212

6.1.9.2.5 Rate <Rate>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Rate used to calculate the amount of the charge or fee.

Datatype: "[PercentageRate](#)" on page 349

**6.1.9.2.6 Bearer
***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies which party/parties will bear the charges associated with the processing of the payment transaction.*Datatype:* "ChargeBearerType1Code" on page 329

CodeName	Name	Definition
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

6.1.9.2.7 Agent <Agt>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Agent that takes the transaction charges or to which the transaction charges are due.**Agent <Agt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.9.2.8 Tax <Tax>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Provides details on the tax applied to charges.**Tax <Tax>** contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		197
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		197
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	197

6.1.9.2.8.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.9.2.8.2 Rate <Rate>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Rate used to calculate the tax.

Datatype: "PercentageRate" on page 349

6.1.9.2.8.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.10 Date Period**6.1.10.1 DatePeriodDetails1**

Definition: Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		197
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		198

6.1.10.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Start date of the range.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.10.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* End date of the range.*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 346**6.1.11 Date Time****6.1.11.1 DateAndDateTime2Choice***Definition:* Choice between a date or a date and time format.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

6.1.11.1.1 Date <Dt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specified date.*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 346**6.1.11.1.2 DateTime <DtTm>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specified date and time.*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 346**6.1.12 Date Time Period****6.1.12.1 DateTimePeriod1***Definition:* Time span defined by a start date and time, and an end date and time.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

6.1.12.1.1 FromDateTime <FrDtTm>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Date and time at which the period starts.*Datatype:* "ISODatetime" on page 346**6.1.12.1.2 ToDateTime <ToDtTm>***Presence:* [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the period ends.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 346

6.1.13 Document

6.1.13.1 CreditorReferenceInformation2

Definition: Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			199
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			199
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		200
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		200
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		200
	Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		200

6.1.13.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of creditor reference.

Type <Tp> contains the following **CreditorReferenceType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			199
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		200
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		200
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		200

6.1.13.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Coded or proprietary format creditor reference type.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **CreditorReferenceType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		200
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		200

6.1.13.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Type of creditor reference, in a coded form.*Datatype:* "DocumentType3Code" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment instruction is related, eg, in a cover scenario.
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.

6.1.13.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Creditor reference type, in a proprietary form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.13.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Entity that assigns the credit reference type.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.13.1.2 Reference <Ref>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique reference, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously refer to the payment transaction.

Usage: If available, the initiating party should provide this reference in the structured remittance information, to enable reconciliation by the creditor upon receipt of the amount of money.

If the business context requires the use of a creditor reference or a payment remit identification, and only one identifier can be passed through the end-to-end chain, the creditor's reference or payment remittance identification should be quoted in the end-to-end transaction identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.14 Financial Institution Identification

6.1.14.1 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5

Definition: Set of elements used to uniquely and unambiguously identify a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.14.1.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.

FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId> contains the following elements (see "[FinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#)" on page 203 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	203
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		204
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		204
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		204
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		205

6.1.14.1.2 BranchIdentification <BrnchId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Usage: This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

BranchIdentification <BrnchId> contains the following elements (see "[BranchData2](#)" on page 205 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		205
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		205
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		205

6.1.14.2 GenericFinancialIdentification1

Definition: Information related to an identification of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		202
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			202
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		202
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		202
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		202

6.1.14.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.14.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **FinancialIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		202
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		202

6.1.14.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code" on page 336

6.1.14.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.14.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.14.3 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify a member of the clearing system.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		203
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		203

6.1.14.3.1 ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId> contains one of the following elements (see "[ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice](#)" on page 306 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		306
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		306

6.1.14.3.2 MemberIdentification <Mmbld>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a member of a clearing system.

Datatype: "[Max35Text](#)" on page 352

6.1.14.4 FinancialInstitutionIdentification8

Definition: Set of elements used to identify a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	203
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		204
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		204
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		204
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		205

6.1.14.4.1 BICFI <BICFI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Impacted by: C4 "BICFI"

Datatype: "[BICFIIdentifier](#)" on page 347

Constraints

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

6.1.14.4.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> contains the following elements (see "[ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2](#)" on page 202 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		203
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		203

6.1.14.4.3 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

Datatype: "[Max140Text](#)" on page 351

6.1.14.4.4 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see "[PostalAddress6](#)" on page 298 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		299
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		299
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		299
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		299
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		299
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		299
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		300
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		300
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	300
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		300

6.1.14.4.5 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following elements (see "[GenericFinancialIdentification1](#)" on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		202
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			202
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		202
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		202
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		202

6.1.14.5 BranchData2

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		205
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		205
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		205

6.1.14.5.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

Datatype: "[Max35Text](#)" on page 352

6.1.14.5.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

Datatype: "[Max140Text](#)" on page 351

6.1.14.5.3 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress6" on page 298 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		299
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		299
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		299
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		299
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		299
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		299
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		300
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		300
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	300
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		300

6.1.15 Financial Instrument

6.1.15.1 SecurityIdentification19

Definition: Identification of a security.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ISIN <ISIN>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		207
	OtherIdentification <OthrId>	[0..*]			207
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		207
	Suffix <Sfx>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		208
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		208

Constraints

- **DescriptionPresenceRule**

If Description is not present then either ISIN or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

On Condition

/Description is absent

Following Must be True

/ISIN Must be present

Or /OtherIdentification[*] Must be present

- **DescriptionUsageRule**

Description must be used alone as the last resort.

- **ISINGuideline**

When an ISIN code exists, it is strongly recommended that the ISIN be used.

- **ISINPresenceRule**

If ISIN is not present then either Description or at least one occurrence of OtherIdentification must be present.

```
On Condition
  /ISIN is absent
Following Must be True
  /OtherIdentification[*] Must be present
Or    /Description Must be present
```

- **OtherIdentificationPresenceRule**

If OtherIdentification is not present then either ISIN or Description must be present.

```
On Condition
  /OtherIdentification[*] is absent
Following Must be True
  /ISIN Must be present
Or    /Description Must be present
```

6.1.15.1.1 ISIN <ISIN>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: International Securities Identification Number (ISIN). A numbering system designed by the United Nation's International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO). The ISIN is composed of a 2-character prefix representing the country of issue, followed by the national security number (if one exists), and a check digit. Each country has a national numbering agency that assigns ISIN numbers for securities in that country.

Datatype: "ISINOct2015Identifier" on page 348

6.1.15.1.2 OtherIdentification <OthrId>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Identification of a security by proprietary or domestic identification scheme.

OtherIdentification <OthrId> contains the following **OtherIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		207
	Suffix <Sfx>	[0..1]	Text		207
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		208

6.1.15.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a security.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.15.1.2.2 Suffix <Sfx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the suffix of the security identification.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 351

6.1.15.1.2.3 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of the identification.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following elements (see "IdentificationSource3Choice" on page 210 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		210
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		210

6.1.15.1.3 Description <Desc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Textual description of a security instrument.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.16 Identification Information

6.1.16.1 GenericIdentification1

Definition: Information related to an identification, eg, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		208
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		208
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		208

6.1.16.1.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.16.1.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.16.1.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.16.2 GenericIdentification30

Definition: Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		209
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		209
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		209

6.1.16.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

Datatype: "Exact4AlphaNumericText" on page 350

6.1.16.2.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.16.2.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Short textual description of the scheme.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.16.3 MessageIdentification2

Definition: Set of elements providing the identification of a message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		209
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[0..1]	Text		209

6.1.16.3.1 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the message name identifier of the message that will be used to provide additional details.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.16.3.2 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the identification of the message that will be used to provide additional details.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.16.4 IdentificationSource3Choice

Definition: Choice between source of identification of a financial instrument.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		210
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		210

6.1.16.4.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification source, as assigned via a pre-determined code list.

Datatype: "ExternalFinancialInstrumentIdentificationType1Code" on page 336

6.1.16.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification source using a proprietary identification scheme.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.16.5 GenericIdentification32

Definition: Identification of an entity.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		210
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		210
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		211
	ShortName <ShrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		211

6.1.16.5.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of the entity.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.16.5.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of identified entity.

Datatype: "PartyType3Code" on page 340

CodeName	Name	Definition
OPOI	OriginatingPOI	Point Of Interaction initiating the card payment transaction.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
DLIS	DelegatIssuer	Party to whom the card issuer delegates to authorise card payment transactions.

6.1.16.5.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity assigning the identification (for example merchant, acceptor, acquirer, or tax authority).

Datatype: "PartyType4Code" on page 341

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
TAXH	TaxAuthority	Tax authority.

6.1.16.5.4 ShortName <ShrtNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the entity.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.16.6 GenericIdentification3

Definition: Information related to an identification, eg, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		212
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		212

6.1.16.6.1 Identification <Id>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name or number assigned by an entity to enable recognition of that entity, eg, account identifier.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.16.6.2 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.17 Miscellaneous****6.1.17.1 NumberAndSumOfTransactions1***Definition:* Set of elements providing the total sum of entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		212
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		212

6.1.17.1.1 NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Number of individual entries included in the report.*Datatype:* "Max15NumericText" on page 351**6.1.17.1.2 Sum <Sum>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Total of all individual entries included in the report.*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 348**6.1.17.2 Pagination1***Definition:* Number used to sequence pages when it is not possible for data to be conveyed in a single message and the data has to be split across several pages (messages).

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		212
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		213

6.1.17.2.1 PageNumber <PgNb>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Page number.

Datatype: ["Max5NumericText" on page 353](#)

6.1.17.2.2 LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates the last page.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see ["YesNoIndicator" on page 348](#)):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

6.1.17.3 TransactionIdentifier1

Definition: Identification of the transaction in an unambiguous way.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		213
	TransactionReference <TxRef>	[1..1]	Text		213

6.1.17.3.1 TransactionDateTime <TxDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Local date and time of the transaction assigned by the POI (Point Of Interaction).

Datatype: ["ISODateTime" on page 346](#)

6.1.17.3.2 TransactionReference <TxRef>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of the transaction that has to be unique for a time period.

Datatype: ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)

6.1.17.4 ReportingSource1Choice

Definition: Specifies the source used to generate the reporting.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		213
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		213

6.1.17.4.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reporting source, as published in an external reporting source code list.

Datatype: ["ExternalReportingSource1Code" on page 338](#)

6.1.17.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reporting source, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.5 SequenceRange1Choice

Definition: Specifies a choice of sequences.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
Or	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
Or	FromToSequence <FrToSeq>	[1..*]			214
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215
Or	EqualSequence <EQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		215
Or}	NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>	[1..*]	Text		215

6.1.17.5.1 FromSequence <FrSeq>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Start sequence of the range.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.5.2 ToSequence <ToSeq>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: End sequence of the range.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.5.3 FromToSequence <FrToSeq>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Particular sequence range specified between a start sequence and an end sequence.

FromToSequence <FrToSeq> contains the following **SequenceRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromSequence <FrSeq>	[1..1]	Text		214
	ToSequence <ToSeq>	[1..1]	Text		215

6.1.17.5.3.1 FromSequence <FrSeq>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Start sequence of the range.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.5.3.2 ToSequence <ToSeq>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* End sequence of the range.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)**6.1.17.5.4 EqualSequence <EQSeq>***Presence:* [1..*]*Definition:* Specified sequence to match.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)**6.1.17.5.5 NotEqualSequence <NEQSeq>***Presence:* [1..*]*Definition:* Specified sequence to be excluded.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)**6.1.17.6 OriginalBusinessQuery1***Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original requestor, to unambiguously identify the business query message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		215
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		215
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		215

6.1.17.6.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original query message.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)**6.1.17.6.2 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the query message name identifier to which the message refers.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)**6.1.17.6.3 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.*Datatype:* ["ISODatetime" on page 346](#)

6.1.17.7 GroupHeader73

Definition: Provides further details on the message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		216
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		216
	MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>	[0..1]	±		216
	MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>	[0..1]	±		217
	OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>	[0..1]	±		217
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		217

6.1.17.7.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, and sent to the account owner or the party authorised to receive the message, to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The account servicing institution has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per account owner for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.7.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 346

6.1.17.7.3 MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party authorised by the account owner to receive information about movements on the account.

Usage: MessageRecipient should only be identified when different from the account owner.

MessageRecipient <MsgRcpt> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification125" on page 268 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		268
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		268
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		269
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	269
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		269

6.1.17.7.4 MessagePagination <MsgPgntn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the page number of the message.

Usage: The pagination of the message is only allowed when agreed between the parties.

MessagePagination <MsgPgntn> contains the following elements (see ["Pagination1"](#) on page 212 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PageNumber <PgNb>	[1..1]	Text		212
	LastPageIndicator <LastPgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		213

6.1.17.7.5 OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original requestor, to unambiguously identify the business query message.

OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry> contains the following elements (see ["OriginalBusinessQuery1"](#) on page 215 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		215
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[0..1]	Text		215
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		215

6.1.17.7.6 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the message.

Datatype: ["Max500Text"](#) on page 353

6.1.17.8 CardEntry3

Definition: Card transaction entry.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Card <Card>	[0..1]			219
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			220
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		221
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		221
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		221
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		221
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		221
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			222
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		222
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		222
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			222
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		223
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		223
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		223
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		223
	POI <POI>	[0..1]			223
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		224
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		225
	GroupIdentification <Grpld>	[0..1]	Text		225
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			225
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		225
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrhdldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		226
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		226
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			227
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		227
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		227
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		227
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			227
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		228

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		228
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		228
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		228
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		229
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		229
	AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>	[0..1]			229
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		229
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		230
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		230
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			230
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		230
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		231
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]			231
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			231
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		231
	PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>	[0..1]	±		232

6.1.17.8.1 Card <Card>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Electronic money product that provides the cardholder with a portable and specialised computer device, which typically contains a microprocessor.

Card <Card> contains the following **PaymentCard4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlainCardData <PlainCardData>	[0..1]			220
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		221
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		221
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		221
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		221
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		221
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			222
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		222
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		222
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			222
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		223
	CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>	[0..1]	Text		223
	CardBrand <CardBrnd>	[0..1]	±		223
	AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>	[0..1]	Text		223

6.1.17.8.1.1 PlainCardData <PlainCardData>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Sensitive data associated with the card performing the transaction.

PlainCardData <PlainCardData> contains the following **PlainCardData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PAN <PAN>	[1..1]	Text		221
	CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>	[0..1]	Text		221
	EffectiveDate <FctvDt>	[0..1]	YearMonth		221
	ExpiryDate <XpryDt>	[1..1]	YearMonth		221
	ServiceCode <SvcCd>	[0..1]	Text		221
	TrackData <TrckData>	[0..*]			222
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		222
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		222
	CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>	[0..1]			222
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		223

6.1.17.8.1.1.1 PAN <PAN>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Primary Account Number (PAN) of the card, or card number.

Datatype: "Min8Max28NumericText" on page 354

6.1.17.8.1.1.2 CardSequenceNumber <CardSeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identify a card inside a set of cards with the same card number (PAN).

Datatype: "Min2Max3NumericText" on page 353

6.1.17.8.1.1.3 EffectiveDate <FctvDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date as from which the card can be used.

Datatype: "ISOYearMonth" on page 354

6.1.17.8.1.1.4 ExpiryDate <XpryDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Expiry date of the card.

Datatype: "ISOYearMonth" on page 354

6.1.17.8.1.1.5 ServiceCode <SvcCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Services attached to the card, as defined in ISO 7813.

Datatype: "Exact3NumericText" on page 350

6.1.17.8.1.1.6 TrackData <TrckData>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Magnetic track or equivalent payment card data.**TrackData <TrckData>** contains the following **TrackData1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TrackNumber <TrckNb>	[0..1]	Text		222
	TrackValue <TrckVal>	[1..1]	Text		222

6.1.17.8.1.1.6.1 TrackNumber <TrckNb>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Track number of the card.*Datatype:* "Exact1NumericText" on page 350**6.1.17.8.1.1.6.2 TrackValue <TrckVal>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Card track content or equivalent.*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 351**6.1.17.8.1.1.7 CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) associated with the card performing the transaction.**CardSecurityCode <CardSctyCd>** contains the following **CardSecurityInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
	CSCValue <CSCVal>	[0..1]	Text		223

6.1.17.8.1.1.7.1 CSCManagement <CSCMgmt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Card security code (CSC) management associated with the transaction.*Datatype:* "CSCManagement1Code" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
PRST	CSCPresent	Card security code present.
BYPS	CSCByPass	Card security code by-passed or not provided by the merchant.
UNRD	CSCUnread	Card security code unreadable.
NCSC	NoCSC	No card security code imprint.

6.1.17.8.1.1.7.2 CSCValue <CSCVal>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Card security code (CSC).*Datatype:* "Min3Max4NumericText" on page 353**6.1.17.8.1.2 CardCountryCode <CardCtryCd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Country code assigned to the card by the card issuer.*Datatype:* "Exact3NumericText" on page 350**6.1.17.8.1.3 CardBrand <CardBrnd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Brand name of the card.**CardBrand <CardBrnd>** contains the following elements (see "GenericIdentification1" on page 208 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		208
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		208
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		208

6.1.17.8.1.4 AdditionalCardData <AddtlCardData>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Additional card issuer specific data.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 353**6.1.17.8.2 POI <POI>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Physical or logical card payment terminal containing software and hardware components.

POI <POI> contains the following **PointOfInteraction1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		224
	SystemName <SysNm>	[0..1]	Text		225
	GroupIdentification <GrpId>	[0..1]	Text		225
	Capabilities <Cpblties>	[0..1]			225
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		225
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		226
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		226
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			227
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		227
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		227
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		227
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		227
	Component <Cmpnt>	[0..*]			227
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		228
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		228
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		228
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		228
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		229
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvINb>	[0..*]	Text		229

6.1.17.8.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of the POI (Point Of Interaction) for the acquirer or its agent.

Identification <Id> contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification32](#)" on page 210 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		210
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		210
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		211
	ShortName <ShrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		211

6.1.17.8.2.2 SystemName <SysNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Common name assigned by the acquirer to the POI system.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 353

6.1.17.8.2.3 GroupIdentification <GrpId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifier assigned by the merchant identifying a set of POI terminals performing some categories of transactions.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.8.2.4 Capabilities <Cpblties>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

Capabilities <Cpblties> contains the following **PointOfInteractionCapabilities1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		225
	CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrdhldrVrfctnCpblties>	[0..*]	CodeSet		226
	OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>	[0..1]	CodeSet		226
	DisplayCapabilities <DispCpblties>	[0..*]			227
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		227
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		227
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		227
	PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>	[0..1]	Text		227

6.1.17.8.2.4.1 CardReadingCapabilities <CardRdngCpblties>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Card reading capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

Datatype: "CardDataReading1Code" on page 328

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.

CodeName	Name	Definition
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

6.1.17.8.2.4.2 CardholderVerificationCapabilities <CrhdldrVrfctnCpblties>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Cardholder verification capabilities of the POI performing the transaction.

Datatype: "CardholderVerificationCapability1Code" on page 328

CodeName	Name	Definition
MNSG	ManualSignature	Manual signature verification.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	Online PIN (Personal Identification Number).
FCPN	OfflinePINCLEAR	Offline PIN in clear (Personal Identification Number).
FEPN	OfflinePINEncrypted	Offline PIN encrypted (Personal Identification Number).
FDSG	OfflineDigitalSignature	Offline digital signature analysis.
FBIO	OfflineBiometrics	Offline biometrics.
MNVR	ManualVerification	Other manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
FBIG	OfflineBiographics	Offline biographics.
APKI	AccountDigitalSignature	Account based digital signature.
PKIS	PKISignature	PKI (Public Key Infrastructure) based digital signature.
CHDT	CardholderData	Cardholder authentication data.
SCEC	SecureElectronicCommerce	Three domain secure (three domain secure authentication of the cardholder).

6.1.17.8.2.4.3 OnLineCapabilities <OnLineCpblties>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: On-line and off-line capabilities of the POI.

Datatype: "OnLineCapability1Code" on page 340

CodeName	Name	Definition
OFLN	OffLine	Off-line only capable.
ONLN	OnLine	On-line only capable.
SMON	SemiOffLine	Off-line capable with possible on-line requests to the acquirer.

6.1.17.8.2.4.4 DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Capabilities of the display components performing the transaction.**DisplayCapabilities <DispCpbilities>** contains the following **DisplayCapabilities1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DisplayType <DispTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		227
	NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>	[1..1]	Text		227
	LineWidth <LineWidth>	[1..1]	Text		227

6.1.17.8.2.4.4.1 DisplayType <DispTp>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Type of display (for example merchant or cardholder).*Datatype:* "UserInterface2Code" on page 346

CodeName	Name	Definition
MDSP	MerchantDisplay	Merchant display or interface.
CDSP	CardholderDisplay	Cardholder display or interface.

6.1.17.8.2.4.4.2 NumberOfLines <NbOfLines>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Number of lines of the display component.*Datatype:* "Max3NumericText" on page 352**6.1.17.8.2.4.4.3 LineWidth <LineWidth>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Number of columns of the display component.*Datatype:* "Max3NumericText" on page 352**6.1.17.8.2.4.5 PrintLineWidth <PrtLineWidth>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Number of columns of the printer component.*Datatype:* "Max3NumericText" on page 352**6.1.17.8.2.5 Component <Cmpnt>***Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Data related to a component of the POI performing the transaction.

Component <Cmpnt> contains the following **PointOfInteractionComponent1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		228
	ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>	[0..1]	Text		228
	Model <Mdl>	[0..1]	Text		228
	VersionNumber <VrsnNb>	[0..1]	Text		228
	SerialNumber <SrlNb>	[0..1]	Text		229
	ApprovalNumber <ApprvlNb>	[0..*]	Text		229

6.1.17.8.2.5.1 POIComponentType <POICmpntTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of component belonging to a POI Terminal.

Datatype: "POIComponentType1Code" on page 341

CodeName	Name	Definition
SOFT	Soft	Payment or other software application.
EMVK	EMVKernel	EMV application kernel (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
EMVO	EMVLevel1	EMV physical interface (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
MRIT	MerchantInterface	Merchant interface.
CHIT	CardholderInterface	Cardholder Interface.
SECM	SecureModule	Security module.
PEDV	PINEntryDevice	Personal identification number (or PIN) entry device (PED).

6.1.17.8.2.5.2 ManufacturerIdentification <ManfctrId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the software, hardware or system provider of the POI component.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.8.2.5.3 Model <Mdl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a model of POI component for a given manufacturer.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.8.2.5.4 VersionNumber <VrsnNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Version of component belonging to a given model.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 351

6.1.17.8.2.5.5 SerialNumber <SrlNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Serial number of a component.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.8.2.5.6 ApprovalNumber <ApprvINb>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique approval number for a component, delivered by a certification body.

Usage: More than one approval number could be present, when assigned by different bodies. The certification body identification must be provided within the approval number (for example at the beginning of the value).

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 353

6.1.17.8.3 AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Card entry details, based on card transaction aggregated data performed by the account servicer.

AggregatedEntry <AggtdNtry> contains the following **CardAggregated2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>	[0..1]	CodeSet		229
	TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		230
	SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>	[0..1]	Text		230
	SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>	[0..1]			230
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		230
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		231
	TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>	[0..1]			231
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			231
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		231

6.1.17.8.3.1 AdditionalService <AddtlSvc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Service in addition to the main service.

Datatype: "CardPaymentServiceType2Code" on page 329

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

6.1.17.8.3.2 TransactionCategory <TxCtgy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Category code conform to ISO 18245, related to the type of services or goods the merchant provides for the transaction.

Datatype: "ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code" on page 334

6.1.17.8.3.3 SaleReconciliationIdentification <SaleRcncltnId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification of the sales reconciliation period between the acceptor and the acquirer. This identification might be linked to the identification of the settlement for further verification by the merchant.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.8.3.4 SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of sequence numbers on which the globalisation applies.

SequenceNumberRange <SeqNbRg> contains the following **CardSequenceNumberRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FirstTransaction <FrstTx>	[0..1]	Text		230
	LastTransaction <LastTx>	[0..1]	Text		231

6.1.17.8.3.4.1 FirstTransaction <FrstTx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: CardSequenceNumberRange1: FirstTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.8.3.4.2 LastTransaction <LastTx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: CardSequenceNumberRange1: LastTransactionSequenceNumberMessage element to be finalised once feedback from Card SEG has been received.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.8.3.5 TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date range on which the globalisation applies.

TransactionDateRange <TxDtRg> contains one of the following **DateOrDateTimePeriod1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			231
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	±		231

6.1.17.8.3.5.1 Date <Dt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Period expressed with dates.

Date <Dt> contains the following **DatePeriod2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		231
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		231

6.1.17.8.3.5.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Start date of the range.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.17.8.3.5.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: End date of the range.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.17.8.3.5.2 DateTime <DtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Period expressed a dates and times.

DateTime <DtTm> contains the following elements (see ["DateTimePeriod1"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

6.1.17.8.4 PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Prepaid account for the transfer or loading of an amount of money.

PrePaidAccount <PrePdAcct> contains the following elements (see ["CashAccount24"](#) on page 89 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		89
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		89
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	90
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		90

6.1.17.9 TotalTransactions6

Definition: Set of elements used to provide summary information on entries.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalEntries <TtlNtries>	[0..1]			233
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		233
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		233
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		234
	TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>	[0..*]			234
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		235
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		235
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		235
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		235
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		236
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		236
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	236
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		237
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		237

6.1.17.9.1 TotalEntries <TtlNtries>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the total number and sum of debit and credit entries.

TotalEntries <TtlNtries> contains the following **NumberAndSumOfTransactions4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		233
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		233
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		234

6.1.17.9.1.1 NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number of individual entries included in the report.

Datatype: "Max15NumericText" on page 351

6.1.17.9.1.2 Sum <Sum>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total of all individual entries included in the report.

Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 348

6.1.17.9.1.3 TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Resulting debit or credit amount of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries.

TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry> contains the following elements (see "AmountAndDirection35" on page 112 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Quantity		112
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112

6.1.17.9.2 TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the total number and sum of credit entries.

TotalCreditEntries <TtlCdtNtries> contains the following elements (see "NumberAndSumOfTransactions1" on page 212 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		212
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		212

6.1.17.9.3 TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the total number and sum of debit entries.

TotalDebitEntries <TtlDbtNtries> contains the following elements (see "NumberAndSumOfTransactions1" on page 212 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		212
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		212

6.1.17.9.4 TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Specifies the total number and sum of entries per bank transaction code.

TotalEntriesPerBankTransactionCode <TtlNtriesPerBkTxCd> contains the following
TotalsPerBankTransactionCode5 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		235
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		235
	TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>	[0..1]	±		235
	CreditEntries <CdtNtries>	[0..1]	±		235
	DebitEntries <DbtNtries>	[0..1]	±		236
	ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		236
	BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>	[1..1]	±	C10, C11	236
	Availability <Avlbtty>	[0..*]	±		237
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	±		237

6.1.17.9.4.1 NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number of individual entries for the bank transaction code.

Datatype: "Max15NumericText" on page 351

6.1.17.9.4.2 Sum <Sum>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total of all individual entries included in the report.

Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 348

6.1.17.9.4.3 TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total debit or credit amount that is the result of the netted amounts for all debit and credit entries per bank transaction code.

TotalNetEntry <TtlNetNtry> contains the following elements (see "AmountAndDirection35" on page 112 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Quantity		112
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112

6.1.17.9.4.4 CreditEntries <CdtNtries>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number of individual credit entries for the bank transaction code.

CreditEntries <CdtNtries> contains the following elements (see ["NumberAndSumOfTransactions1"](#) on page 212 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		212
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		212

6.1.17.9.4.5 DebitEntries <DbtNtries>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number of individual debit entries for the bank transaction code.

DebitEntries <DbtNtries> contains the following elements (see ["NumberAndSumOfTransactions1"](#) on page 212 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NumberOfEntries <NbOfNtries>	[0..1]	Text		212
	Sum <Sum>	[0..1]	Quantity		212

6.1.17.9.4.6 ForecastIndicator <FcstInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the bank transaction code is related to booked or forecast items.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

6.1.17.9.4.7 BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to fully identify the type of underlying transaction resulting in an entry.

Impacted by: C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule", C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"

BankTransactionCode <BkTxCd> contains the following elements (see ["BankTransactionCodeStructure4"](#) on page 119 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		119
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			119
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		120
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		120

Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True
 /Domain Must be present
 Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

6.1.17.9.4.8 Availability <Avlbt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to indicate when the booked amount of money will become available, that is can be accessed and starts generating interest.

Availability <Avlbt> contains the following elements (see "[CashAvailability1](#)" on page 183 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]			183
{Or	NumberOfDays <NbOfDays>	[1..1]	Text		183
Or}	ActualDate <ActlDt>	[1..1]	Date		184
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	184
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184

6.1.17.9.4.9 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates the date (and time) of the transaction summary.

Date <Dt> contains one of the following elements (see "[DateAndDateTime2Choice](#)" on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		198
Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

6.1.17.10 TransactionInterest4

Definition: Provide further details on transaction specific interest information that applies to the underlying transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	238
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			239
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	240
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			241
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		241
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			242
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		242
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			242
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			243
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		243
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			244
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		245
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	245
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		245
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			246
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		246
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	246

6.1.17.10.1 TotalInterestAndTaxAmount <TtlIntrstAndTaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of interests and taxes included in the entry amount.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.17.10.2 Record <Rcrd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Individual interest record.

Record <Rcrd> contains the following **InterestRecord2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	240
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			241
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		241
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]			242
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		242
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			242
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			243
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		243
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			244
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		245
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	245
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		245
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			246
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		246
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	246

6.1.17.10.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of interest included in the entry amount.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.17.10.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the interest amount included in the entry is credit or debit amount.

Usage: A zero amount is considered to be a credit.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.1.17.10.2.3 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of interest.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **InterestType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		241

6.1.17.10.2.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of interest.

Datatype: "InterestType1Code" on page 339

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVNR	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

6.1.17.10.2.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of interest in uncoded form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.10.2.4 Rate <Rate>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to qualify the interest rate.

Rate <Rate> contains the following **Rate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		242
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			242
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			243
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		243
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			244
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		245
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	245

6.1.17.10.2.4.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of interest rate.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following elements (see "RateType4Choice" on page 302 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Percentage <Pctg>	[1..1]	Rate		302
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		302

6.1.17.10.2.4.2 ValidityRange <VldtyRg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: An amount range where the interest rate is applicable.

ValidityRange <VldtyRg> contains the following **ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmountRange2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			243
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		243
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			244
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		245
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	245

6.1.17.10.2.4.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specified amount or amount range.

Amount <Amt> contains one of the following **ImpliedCurrencyAmountRange1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		243
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			244
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		245

6.1.17.10.2.4.2.1.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

FromAmount <FrAmt> contains the following elements (see "AmountRangeBoundary1" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		113
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		113

6.1.17.10.2.4.2.1.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

ToAmount <ToAmt> contains the following elements (see "AmountRangeBoundary1" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		113
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		113

6.1.17.10.2.4.2.1.3 FromToAmount <FrToAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Range of valid amount values.

FromToAmount <FrToAmt> contains the following **FromToAmountRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		244
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		244

6.1.17.10.2.4.2.1.3.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Lower boundary of a range of amount values.

FromAmount <FrAmt> contains the following elements (see "AmountRangeBoundary1" on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		113
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		113

6.1.17.10.2.4.2.1.3.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Upper boundary of a range of amount values.

ToAmount <ToAmt> contains the following elements (see ["AmountRangeBoundary1"](#) on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		113
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		113

6.1.17.10.2.4.2.1.4 EqualAmount <EQAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Exact value an amount must match to be considered valid.

Datatype: ["ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 325

6.1.17.10.2.4.2.1.5 NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Value that an amount must not match to be considered valid.

Datatype: ["ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 325

6.1.17.10.2.4.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the amount is a credited or debited amount.

Datatype: ["CreditDebitCode"](#) on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.1.17.10.2.4.2.3 Currency <Ccy>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Medium of exchange of value, used to qualify an amount.

Impacted by: [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

Datatype: ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode"](#) on page 326

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.17.10.2.5 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for the calculation of the interest.

FromDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see ["DateTimePeriod1"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

6.1.17.10.2.6 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the interest.

Datatype: ["Max35Text"](#) on page 352

6.1.17.10.2.7 Tax <Tax>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the tax applied to charges.

Tax <Tax> contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		246
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		246
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	246

6.1.17.10.2.7.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

Datatype: ["Max35Text"](#) on page 352

6.1.17.10.2.7.2 Rate <Rate>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Rate used to calculate the tax.

Datatype: ["PercentageRate"](#) on page 349

6.1.17.10.2.7.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

Impacted by: [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

Datatype: ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.17.11 AccountInterest4

Definition: Provides further details on the interest that applies to the account at a particular moment in time.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		249
	Rate <Rate>	[0..*]			249
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		249
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			250
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			250
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			251
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		252
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		252
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	252
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		253
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		253
	Tax <Tax>	[0..1]			253
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		253
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		253
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	253

6.1.17.11.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of interest.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **InterestType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		249

6.1.17.11.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of interest.

Datatype: "InterestType1Code" on page 339

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVNR	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

6.1.17.11.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of interest in uncoded form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.11.2 Rate <Rate>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to qualify the interest rate.

Rate <Rate> contains the following **Rate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		249
	ValidityRange <VldtyRg>	[0..1]			250
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			250
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			251
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		252
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		252
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	252

6.1.17.11.2.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of interest rate.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following elements (see "RateType4Choice" on page 302 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Percentage <Pctg>	[1..1]	Rate		302
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		302

6.1.17.11.2.2 ValidityRange <VldtyRg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: An amount range where the interest rate is applicable.

ValidityRange <VldtyRg> contains the following **ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmountRange2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]			250
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			251
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		252
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		252
	Currency <Ccy>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C2	252

6.1.17.11.2.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specified amount or amount range.

Amount <Amt> contains one of the following **ImpliedCurrencyAmountRange1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
Or	FromToAmount <FrToAmt>	[1..1]			251
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		252
Or	EqualAmount <EQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252
Or}	NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		252

6.1.17.11.2.2.1.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see ["AmountRangeBoundary1"](#) on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		113
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		113

6.1.17.11.2.2.1.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see ["AmountRangeBoundary1"](#) on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		113
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		113

6.1.17.11.2.2.1.3 FromToAmount <FrToAmt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Range of valid amount values.**FromToAmount <FrToAmt>** contains the following **FromToAmountRange1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromAmount <FrAmt>	[1..1]	±		251
	ToAmount <ToAmt>	[1..1]	±		252

6.1.17.11.2.2.1.3.1 FromAmount <FrAmt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Lower boundary of a range of amount values.**FromAmount <FrAmt>** contains the following elements (see ["AmountRangeBoundary1"](#) on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		113
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		113

6.1.17.11.2.2.1.3.2 ToAmount <ToAmt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Upper boundary of a range of amount values.**ToAmount <ToAmt>** contains the following elements (see ["AmountRangeBoundary1"](#) on page 113 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BoundaryAmount <BdryAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		113
	Included <Incl>	[1..1]	Indicator		113

6.1.17.11.2.2.1.4 EqualAmount <EQAmt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Exact value an amount must match to be considered valid.*Datatype:* ["ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 325**6.1.17.11.2.2.1.5 NotEqualAmount <NEQAmt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Value that an amount must not match to be considered valid.*Datatype:* ["ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 325**6.1.17.11.2.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Indicates whether the amount is a credited or debited amount.*Datatype:* ["CreditDebitCode"](#) on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.1.17.11.2.2.3 Currency <Ccy>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Medium of exchange of value, used to qualify an amount.*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode"](#) on page 326**Constraints**

- ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.17.11.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for the calculation of the interest.

FromToDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see ["DateTimePeriod1"](#) on page 198 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDateTime <FrDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198
	ToDateTime <ToDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		198

6.1.17.11.4 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the interest.

Datatype: ["Max35Text"](#) on page 352

6.1.17.11.5 Tax <Tax>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the tax applied to charges.

Tax <Tax> contains the following **TaxCharges2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		253
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		253
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	253

6.1.17.11.5.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference to unambiguously identify the nature of the tax levied, such as Value Added Tax (VAT).

Datatype: ["Max35Text"](#) on page 352

6.1.17.11.5.2 Rate <Rate>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Rate used to calculate the tax.

Datatype: ["PercentageRate"](#) on page 349

6.1.17.11.5.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money resulting from the calculation of the tax.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.17.12 ContactDetails2

Definition: Communication device number or electronic address used for communication.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		254
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		254
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		255
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		255
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		255
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		255
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		255

6.1.17.12.1 NamePrefix <NmPrfx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Datatype: "NamePrefix1Code" on page 340

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.

6.1.17.12.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.17.12.3 PhoneNumber <PhneNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 354

6.1.17.12.4 MobileNumber <MobNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 354

6.1.17.12.5 FaxNumber <FaxNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 354

6.1.17.12.6 EmailAddress <EmailAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

Datatype: "Max2048Text" on page 351

6.1.17.12.7 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Contact details in another form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.13 RemittanceAmount2

Definition: Nature of the amount and currency on a document referred to in the remittance section, typically either the original amount due/payable or the amount actually remitted for the referenced document.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	256
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			257
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			257
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		257
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		257
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	257
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	258
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			258
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			258
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		259
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		259
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	259
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			259
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	260
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		260
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		260
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		260
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	261

6.1.17.13.1 DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.17.13.2 DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Amount specified for the referred document is the amount of discount to be applied to the amount due and payable to the creditor.

DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt> contains the following **DiscountAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			257
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		257
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		257
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	257

6.1.17.13.2.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of the amount.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **DiscountAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		257
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		257

6.1.17.13.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code" on page 335

6.1.17.13.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.13.2.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money, which has been typed.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.17.13.3 CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount specified for the referred document is the amount of a credit note.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.17.13.4 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Quantity of cash resulting from the calculation of the tax.

TaxAmount <TaxAmt> contains the following **TaxAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			258
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		259
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		259
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	259

6.1.17.13.4.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of the amount.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **TaxAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		259
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		259

6.1.17.13.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalTaxAmountType1Code" on page 339

6.1.17.13.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.13.4.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money, which has been typed.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.17.13.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the document adjustment.

AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn> contains the following **DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	260
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		260
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		260
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		260

6.1.17.13.5.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the document adjustment.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.17.13.5.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.1.17.13.5.3 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

Datatype: "Max4Text" on page 352

6.1.17.13.5.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details on the document adjustment.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.17.13.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.17.14 RemittanceLocation4

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the remittance advice.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	RemittanceIdentification <RmtId>	[0..1]	Text		261
	RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>	[0..*]			261
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		262
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrncAdr>	[0..1]	Text		262
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			262
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		263
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		263

6.1.17.14.1 RemittanceIdentification <RmtId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the remittance information sent separately from the payment instruction, such as a remittance advice.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.17.14.2 RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the location and/or delivery of the remittance information.

RemittanceLocationDetails <RmtLctnDtls> contains the following **RemittanceLocationDetails1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Method <Mtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		262
	ElectronicAddress <ElctrncAdr>	[0..1]	Text		262
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]			262
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		263
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		263

6.1.17.14.2.1 Method <Mtd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Method used to deliver the remittance advice information.

Datatype: "RemittanceLocationMethod2Code" on page 342

CodeName	Name	Definition
FAXI	Fax	Remittance advice information must be faxed.
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Remittance advice information must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Remittance advice information needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.
EMAL	EMail	Remittance advice information must be sent through e-mail.
POST	Post	Remittance advice information must be sent through postal services.
SMSM	SMS	Remittance advice information must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).

6.1.17.14.2.2 ElectronicAddress <ElctrncAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Electronic address to which an agent is to send the remittance information.

Datatype: "Max2048Text" on page 351

6.1.17.14.2.3 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Postal address to which an agent is to send the remittance information.

PostalAddress <PstIAdr> contains the following **NameAndAddress10** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[1..1]	Text		263
	Address <Adr>	[1..1]	±		263

6.1.17.14.2.3.1 Name <Nm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.17.14.2.3.2 Address <Adr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Postal address of a party.

Address <Adr> contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress6" on page 298 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		299
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		299
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		299
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		299
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		299
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		299
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		300
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		300
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	300
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		300

6.1.17.15 YieldedOrValueType1Choice

Definition: Choice of value type.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Yielded <Yldd>	[1..1]	Indicator		263
Or}	ValueType <ValTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		264

6.1.17.15.1 Yielded <Yldd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the price is expressed as a yield.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

6.1.17.15.2 Value Type <ValTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of value in which the price is expressed.

Datatype: "PriceValueType1Code" on page 342

CodeName	Name	Definition
DISC	Discount	Price expressed as a number of percentage points below par, for example, a discount price of 2.0% equals a price of 98 when par is 100.
PREM	Premium	Price expressed as a number of percentage points above par, for example, a premium price of 2.0% equals a price of 102 when par is 100.
PARV	Par	Price is the face amount.

6.1.17.16 SupplementaryData1

Definition: Additional information that can not be captured in the structured fields and/or any other specific block.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		264
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		264

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

6.1.17.16.1 PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous reference to the location where the supplementary data must be inserted in the message instance.

In the case of XML, this is expressed by a valid XPath.

Datatype: "Max350Text" on page 352

6.1.17.16.2 Envelope <Envlp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical element wrapping the supplementary data.

Type: (External Schema)

Technical component that contains the validated supplementary data information. This technical envelope allows to segregate the supplementary data information from any other information.

6.1.17.17 RemittanceInformation15

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		265
	Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		265

6.1.17.17.1 Unstructured <Ustrd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in an unstructured form.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.17.17.2 Structured <Strd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Structured <Strd> contains the following elements (see "StructuredRemittanceInformation15" on page 276 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>	[0..*]			278
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			280
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			280
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		280
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		281
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		281
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		281
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		282
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			282
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			283
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			284
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			284
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		284
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		284
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		285
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		285
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		285
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		285
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			285
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	286
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			287
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			287
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		287
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		287
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	287
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	288
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			288
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			288
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		289
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		289

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	289
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			289
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	290
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		290
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		290
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		290
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	291
	ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]	±		291
	CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>	[0..1]	±		292
	Invoicer <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		293
	Invoicee <Invcee>	[0..1]	±		293
	TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]	±		294
	GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]			295
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			295
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			295
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		296
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		296
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		296
	Garnishee <Gmshee>	[0..1]	±		296
	GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		297
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		297
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		297
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	297
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		298
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermtnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		298
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>	[0..3]	Text		298

6.1.17.18 Purpose2Choice

Definition: Specifies the underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage: Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		268
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		268

6.1.17.18.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Underlying reason for the payment transaction, as published in an external purpose code list.

Datatype: "ExternalPurpose1Code" on page 338

6.1.17.18.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.18 Organisation Identification

6.1.18.1 PartyIdentification125

Definition: Set of elements used to identify a person or an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		268
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		268
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		269
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	269
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		269

6.1.18.1.1 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.18.1.2 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstIAdr> contains the following elements (see "[PostalAddress6](#)" on page 298 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		299
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		299
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		299
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		299
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		299
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		299
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		300
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		300
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	300
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		300

6.1.18.1.3 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following elements (see "[Party34Choice](#)" on page 272 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]	±		272
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]	±		272

6.1.18.1.4 CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.

Impacted by: [C5 "Country"](#)

Datatype: ["CountryCode"](#) on page 330

Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

6.1.18.1.5 ContactDetails <CtctDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.

ContactDetails <CtctDtls> contains the following elements (see "ContactDetails2" on page 254 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		254
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		254
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		255
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		255
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		255
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		255
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		255

6.1.18.2 OrganisationIdentification8

Definition: Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	270
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			271
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		271
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			271
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		271
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		271
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		272

6.1.18.2.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution or non financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Impacted by: C3 "AnyBIC"

Datatype: "AnyBICIdentifier" on page 347

Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

6.1.18.2.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericOrganisationIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		271
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			271
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		271
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		271
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		272

6.1.18.2.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.18.2.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		271
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		271

6.1.18.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code" on page 337

6.1.18.2.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.18.2.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.19 Party Identification

6.1.19.1 Party34Choice

Definition: Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]	±		272
Or}	PrivatIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]	±		272

6.1.19.1.1 OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

OrganisationIdentification <OrgId> contains the following elements (see "[OrganisationIdentification8](#)" on page 270 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	270
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			271
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		271
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			271
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		271
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		271
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		272

6.1.19.1.2 PrivatIdentification <PrvtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, for example a passport.

PrivateIdentification <PrvtId> contains the following elements (see "PersonIdentification13" on page 274 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			274
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		275
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		275
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		275
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	275
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			275
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		275
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			276
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		276
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		276
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		276

6.1.19.2 Party35Choice

Definition: Identification of a person, an organisation or a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		273
Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		273

6.1.19.2.1 Party <Pty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a person or an organisation.

Party <Pty> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification125" on page 268 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		268
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		268
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		269
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	269
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		269

6.1.19.2.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a financial institution.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 201 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]	±		201
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		201

6.1.20 Person Identification

6.1.20.1 PersonIdentification13

Definition: Unique and unambiguous way to identify a person.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			274
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		275
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		275
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		275
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	275
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			275
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		275
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			276
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		276
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		276
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		276

6.1.20.1.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and place of birth of a person.

DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth> contains the following **DateAndPlaceOfBirth1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		275
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		275
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		275
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	275

6.1.20.1.1.1 BirthDate <BirthDt>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Date on which a person is born.*Datatype:* ["ISODate" on page 346](#)**6.1.20.1.1.2 ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Province where a person was born.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)**6.1.20.1.1.3 CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* City where a person was born.*Datatype:* ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)**6.1.20.1.1.4 CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Country where a person was born.*Impacted by:* [C5 "Country"](#)*Datatype:* ["CountryCode" on page 330](#)**Constraints**

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

6.1.20.1.2 Other <Othr>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.**Other <Othr>** contains the following **GenericPersonIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		275
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			276
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		276
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		276
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		276

6.1.20.1.2.1 Identification <Id>*Presence:* [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.20.1.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **PersonIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		276
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		276

6.1.20.1.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalPersonIdentification1Code" on page 337

6.1.20.1.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.20.1.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.21 POI Component

6.1.21.1 StructuredRemittanceInformation15

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>	[0..*]			278
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			280
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			280
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		280
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		281
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		281
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		281
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		282
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			282
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			283
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			284
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			284
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		284
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		284
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		285
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		285
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		285
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		285
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			285
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	286
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			287
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			287
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		287
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		287
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	287
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	288
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			288
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			288
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		289
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		289
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	289

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			289
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	290
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		290
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		290
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		290
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	291
	ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]	±		291
	CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>	[0..1]	±		292
	Invoice <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		293
	Invoicee <Invcee>	[0..1]	±		293
	TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]	±		294
	GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]			295
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			295
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			295
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		296
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		296
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		296
	Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		296
	GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		297
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		297
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		297
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	297
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		298
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermtnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		298
	AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>	[0..3]	Text		298

6.1.21.1.1 ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides the identification and the content of the referred document.

ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf> contains the following
ReferredDocumentInformation7 elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			280
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			280
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		280
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		281
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		281
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		281
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		282
	LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			282
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			283
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			284
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			284
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		284
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		284
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		285
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		285
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		285
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		285
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			285
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	286
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			287
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			287
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		287
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		287
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	287
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	288
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			288
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			288
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		289
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		289
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	289

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			289
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	290
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		290
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		290
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		290
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	291

6.1.21.1.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document.

Type <Tp> contains the following **ReferredDocumentType4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			280
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		280
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		281
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		281

6.1.21.1.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **ReferredDocumentType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		280
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		281

6.1.21.1.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Document type in a coded form.

Datatype: "DocumentType6Code" on page 332

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.

CodeName	Name	Definition
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

6.1.21.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.21.1.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.21.1.1.2 Number <Nb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.21.1.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date associated with the referred document.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.21.1.1.4 LineDetails <LineDtls>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide the content of the referred document line.

LineDetails <LineDtls> contains the following **DocumentLineInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..*]			283
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			284
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			284
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		284
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		284
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		285
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		285
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		285
	Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		285
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			285
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	286
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			287
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			287
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		287
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		287
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	287
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	288
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			288
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			288
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		289
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		289
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	289
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			289
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	290
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		290
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		290
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		290
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	291

6.1.21.1.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Provides identification of the document line.

Identification <Id> contains the following **DocumentLineIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			284
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			284
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		284
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		284
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		285
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		285
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		285

6.1.21.1.1.4.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document line identification.

Type <Tp> contains the following **DocumentLineType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			284
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		284
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		284
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		285

6.1.21.1.1.4.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document line identification.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **DocumentLineType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		284
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		284

6.1.21.1.1.4.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Line identification type in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalDocumentLineType1Code" on page 336

6.1.21.1.1.4.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.21.1.1.4.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the reference document line identificationtype.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.21.1.1.4.1.2 Number <Nb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the type specified for the referred document line.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.21.1.1.4.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date associated with the referred document line.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.21.1.1.4.2 Description <Desc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Description associated with the document line.

Datatype: "Max2048Text" on page 351

6.1.21.1.1.4.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the amounts of the document line.

Amount <Amt> contains the following **RemittanceAmount3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	286
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			287
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			287
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		287
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		287
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	287
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	288
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			288
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			288
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		289
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		289
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	289
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			289
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	290
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		290
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		290
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		290
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	291

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.1 DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount specified is the exact amount due and payable to the creditor.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.2 DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Amount of discount to be applied to the amount due and payable to the creditor.

DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt> contains the following **DiscountAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			287
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		287
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		287
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	287

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.2.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of the amount.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **DiscountAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		287
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		287

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code" on page 335

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.2.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money, which has been typed.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.3 CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of a credit note.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.4 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Amount of the tax.

TaxAmount <TaxAmt> contains the following **TaxAmountAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			288
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		289
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		289
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	289

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.4.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of the amount.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **TaxAmountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		289
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		289

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "ExternalTaxAmountType1Code" on page 339

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.4.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money, which has been typed.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.5 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the adjustment.

AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn> contains the following **DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	290
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		290
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		290
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		290

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.5.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the document adjustment.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.5.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

Datatype: "CreditDebitCode" on page 331

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.5.3 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

Datatype: "Max4Text" on page 352

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.5.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details on the document adjustment.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.21.1.1.4.3.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money remitted.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.21.1.2 ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the amounts of the referred document.

ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt> contains the following elements (see "RemittanceAmount2" on page 255 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DuePayableAmount <DuePyblAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	256
	DiscountAppliedAmount <DscntApldAmt>	[0..*]			257
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			257
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		257
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		257
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	257
	CreditNoteAmount <CdtNoteAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	258
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..*]			258
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			258
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		259
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		259
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	259
	AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			259
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	260
	CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		260
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		260
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		260
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	261

6.1.21.1.3 CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf> contains the following elements (see "CreditorReferenceInformation2" on page 199 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			199
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			199
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		200
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		200
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		200
	Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		200

6.1.21.1.4 Invoicer <Invcr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the organisation issuing the invoice, when it is different from the creditor or ultimate creditor.

Invoicer <Invcr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification125" on page 268 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		268
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		268
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		269
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	269
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		269

6.1.21.1.5 Invoicee <Invcee>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the party to whom an invoice is issued, when it is different from the debtor or ultimate debtor.

Invoicee <Invcee> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification125" on page 268 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		268
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		268
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		269
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	269
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		269

6.1.21.1.6 TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Provides remittance information about a payment made for tax-related purposes.**TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>** contains the following elements (see "TaxInformation7" on page 317 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]			318
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		319
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		319
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		319
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]			319
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		319
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		320
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		320
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			320
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		320
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		320
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]			320
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		321
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		321
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		321
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			321
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		321
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		322
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		322
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		322
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		322
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	322
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	322
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		323
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		323
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		323

6.1.21.1.7 GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt> contains the following **Garnishment2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]			295
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			295
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		296
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		296
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		296
	Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		296
	GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		297
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		297
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		297
	RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	297
	FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		298
	EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		298

6.1.21.1.7.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of garnishment.

Type <Tp> contains the following **GarnishmentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			295
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		296
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		296
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		296

6.1.21.1.7.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the garnishment.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **GarnishmentType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		296
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		296

6.1.21.1.7.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Garnishment type in a coded form.

Would suggest this to be an External Code List to contain:

GNCS Garnishment from a third party payer for Child Support

GNDP Garnishment from a Direct Payer for Child Support

GTPP Garnishment from a third party payer to taxing agency.

Datatype: "ExternalGarnishmentType1Code" on page 337

6.1.21.1.7.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary identification of the type of garnishment.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.21.1.7.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the garnishment type.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.21.1.7.2 Garnishee <Grnshee>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the garnisher.

Garnishee <Grnshee> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification125" on page 268 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		268
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		268
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		269
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	269
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		269

6.1.21.1.7.3 GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the credit side of the transaction who administers the garnishment on behalf of the ultimate beneficiary.

GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification125" on page 268 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		268
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		268
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		269
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	269
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		269

6.1.21.1.7.4 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reference information that is specific to the agency receiving the garnishment.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.21.1.7.5 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of payment which garnishment was taken from.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.21.1.7.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.21.1.7.7 FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrnclnd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates if the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has family medical insurance coverage available.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

6.1.21.1.7.8 EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates if the employment of the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has been terminated.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 348):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

6.1.21.1.8 AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>

Presence: [0..3]

Definition: Additional information, in free text form, to complement the structured remittance information.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.22 Postal Address**6.1.22.1 PostalAddress6**

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		299
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		299
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		299
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		299
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		299
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		299
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		300
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		300
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	300
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		300

6.1.22.1.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the nature of the postal address.

Datatype: "AddressType2Code" on page 326

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

6.1.22.1.2 Department <Dept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 353

6.1.22.1.3 SubDepartment <SubDept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 353

6.1.22.1.4 StreetName <StrtNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a street or thoroughfare.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 353

6.1.22.1.5 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 351

6.1.22.1.6 PostCode <PstCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 351

6.1.22.1.7 TownName <TwnNm>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.22.1.8 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.22.1.9 Country <Ctry>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Nation with its own government.*Impacted by:* C5 "Country"*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 330**Constraints**

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

6.1.22.1.10 AddressLine <AdrLine>*Presence:* [0..7]*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 353**6.1.23 Price****6.1.23.1 PriceRateOrAmount3Choice***Definition:* Choice of formats for the price.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Rate <Rate>	[1..1]	Rate		300
Or}	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2	301

6.1.23.1.1 Rate <Rate>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Price expressed as a rate, that is percentage.*Datatype:* "PercentageRate" on page 349

6.1.23.1.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Price expressed as a currency and value.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAnd13DecimalAmount" on page 324

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.1.23.2 Price7

Definition: Type and information about a price.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	±		301
	Value <Val>	[1..1]	±		301

6.1.23.2.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specification of the price type.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following elements (see "YieldedOrValueType1Choice" on page 263 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Yielded <Yldd>	[1..1]	Indicator		263
Or}	ValueType <ValTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		264

6.1.23.2.2 Value <Val>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Value of the price, for example, as a currency and value.

Value <Val> contains one of the following elements (see "PriceRateOrAmount3Choice" on page 300 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Rate <Rate>	[1..1]	Rate		300
Or}	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2	301

6.1.24 Rate

6.1.24.1 RateType4Choice

Definition: Specifies the rate as a percentage or a text.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Percentage <Pctg>	[1..1]	Rate		302
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	Text		302

6.1.24.1.1 Percentage <Pctg>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Ratio of the amount of interest paid during a certain period of time compared to the principal amount of the interest bearing financial instrument.

Datatype: "PercentageRate" on page 349

6.1.24.1.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Rate type expressed, in an other form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.25 Securities Quantity

6.1.25.1 FinancialInstrumentQuantityChoice

Definition: Choice between formats for the quantity of security.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Unit <Unit>	[1..1]	Quantity		302
Or	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		302
Or}	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		303

6.1.25.1.1 Unit <Unit>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Quantity expressed as a number, eg, a number of shares.

Datatype: "DecimalNumber" on page 348

6.1.25.1.2 FaceAmount <FaceAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Quantity expressed as an amount representing the face amount, ie, the principal, of a debt instrument.

Datatype: "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

6.1.25.1.3 AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Quantity expressed as an amount representing the current amortised face amount of a bond, eg, a periodic reduction of a bond's principal amount.

Datatype: "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

6.1.25.2 OriginalAndCurrentQuantities1

Definition: Original and current value of an asset-back instrument.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FaceAmount <FaceAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		303
	AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>	[1..1]	Amount		303

6.1.25.2.1 FaceAmount <FaceAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Quantity expressed as an amount representing the face amount, that is, the principal of a debt instrument.

Datatype: "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

6.1.25.2.2 AmortisedValue <AmtsdVal>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Quantity expressed as an amount representing the current amortised face amount of a bond, for example, a periodic reduction/increase of a bond's principal amount.

Datatype: "ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

6.1.26 Status

6.1.26.1 PaymentReturnReason3

Definition: Provides further details on the reason of the return of the transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnlBkTxCd>	[0..1]	±	C10, C11	304
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		304
	Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			305
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		305
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		305
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		305

Constraints

- **ReturnReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AdditionalInformation must be present.

On Condition

/Reason/Code is equal to value 'NARR'

And /Reason is present

And /Reason/Code is present

Following Must be True

/AdditionalInformation[*] Must be present

6.1.26.1.1 OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnIBkTxCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Bank transaction code included in the original entry for the transaction.

Impacted by: [C10 "DomainOrProprietaryRule"](#), [C11 "FamilyAndSubFamilyRule"](#)

OriginalBankTransactionCode <OrgnIBkTxCd> contains the following elements (see ["BankTransactionCodeStructure4"](#) on page 119 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Domain <Domn>	[0..1]	±		119
	Proprietary <Prtry>	[0..1]			119
	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	Text		120
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		120

Constraints

- **DomainOrProprietaryRule**

Either Proprietary or Domain or both must be present.

Following Must be True

/Domain Must be present

Or /Proprietary Must be present

- **FamilyAndSubFamilyRule**

If a specific (non-generic) Family code is not present, then a specific (non-generic) SubFamily code is not allowed.

6.1.26.1.2 Originator <Orgtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that issues the return.

Originator <Orgtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification125" on page 268 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		268
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		268
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		269
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	269
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		269

6.1.26.1.3 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the return.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **ReturnReason5Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		305
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		305

6.1.26.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the return, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: "ExternalReturnReason1Code" on page 338

6.1.26.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the return, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.26.1.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Further details on the return reason.

Datatype: "Max105Text" on page 350

6.1.26.2 EntryStatus1Choice

Definition: Specifies the status of an entry on the books of the account servicer.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		306
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		306

6.1.26.2.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Entry status, in a coded form.*Datatype:* "ExternalEntryStatus1Code" on page 336**6.1.26.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Entry status, in a proprietary form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.27 System Identification****6.1.27.1 ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice***Definition:* Choice of a clearing system identifier.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		306
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		306

6.1.27.1.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* "ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code" on page 335**6.1.27.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.28 Tax****6.1.28.1 TaxInformation6***Definition:* Details about tax paid, or to be paid, to the government in accordance with the law, including pre-defined parameters such as thresholds and type of account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]			307
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		307
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		308
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		308
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]			308
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		308
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		308
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		308
	Authorisation <Authstr>	[0..1]			308
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		309
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		309
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZn>	[0..1]	Text		309
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		309
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		309
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	309
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	310
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		310
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		310
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		310

6.1.28.1.1 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains the following **TaxParty1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		307
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		308
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		308

6.1.28.1.1.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax identification number of the creditor.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.1.1.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.28.1.1.3 TaxType <TaxTp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Type of tax payer.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.28.1.2 Debtor <Dbtr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Set of elements used to identify the party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following **TaxParty2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		308
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		308
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		308
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			308
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		309
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		309

6.1.28.1.2.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Tax identification number of the debtor.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.28.1.2.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.28.1.2.3 TaxType <TaxTp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Type of tax payer.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.28.1.2.4 Authorisation <Authstn>***Presence:* [0..1]

Definition: Details of the authorised tax paying party.

Authorisation <Authstn> contains the following **TaxAuthorisation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		309
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		309

6.1.28.1.2.4.1 Title <Titl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Title or position of debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.1.2.4.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.28.1.3 AdministrationZone <AdmstnZn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.1.4 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.28.1.5 Method <Mtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.1.6 TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money on which the tax is based.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.28.1.7 TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.28.1.8 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date by which tax is due.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.28.1.9 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Sequential number of the tax report.

Datatype: "Number" on page 349

6.1.28.1.10 Record <Rcrd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Record of tax details.

Record <Rcrd> contains the following elements (see ["TaxRecord2"](#) on page 315 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		316
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		316
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		316
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		316
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		316
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		316
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		317
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]	±		317
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		317

6.1.28.2 TaxAmount2

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the tax amount(s) of tax record.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		311
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	311
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	312
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]	±		312

6.1.28.2.1 Rate <Rate>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Rate used to calculate the tax.

Datatype: ["PercentageRate"](#) on page 349

6.1.28.2.2 TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money on which the tax is based.

Impacted by: [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

Datatype: ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.28.2.3 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount that is the result of the calculation of the tax for the record.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.28.2.4 Details <Dtls>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the tax period and amount.

Details <Dtls> contains the following elements (see "TaxRecordDetails2" on page 314 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		314
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	315

6.1.28.3 TaxPeriod2

Definition: Period of time details related to the tax payment.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Date		313
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		313
	FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]			314
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		314
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		314

6.1.28.3.1 Year <Yr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Year related to the tax payment.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.28.3.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the period related to the tax payment.

Datatype: "TaxRecordPeriod1Code" on page 343

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

6.1.28.3.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

FromToDate <FrToDt> contains the following **DatePeriod2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		314
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		314

6.1.28.3.3.1 FromDate <FrDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Start date of the range.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.28.3.3.2 ToDate <ToDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: End date of the range.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.28.4 TaxRecordDetails2

Definition: Provides information on the individual tax amount(s) per period of the tax record.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		314
	Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	C2, C6	315

6.1.28.4.1 Period <Prd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

Period <Prd> contains the following elements (see "TaxPeriod2" on page 312 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Date		313
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		313
	FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]			314
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		314
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		314

6.1.28.4.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Underlying tax amount related to the specified period.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.28.5 TaxRecord2

Definition: Set of elements used to define the tax record.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		316
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		316
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		316
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		316
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		316
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		316
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		317
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]	±		317
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		317

6.1.28.5.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: High level code to identify the type of tax details.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.5.2 Category <Ctgy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the tax code as published by the tax authority.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.5.3 CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details of the category tax code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.5.4 DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Code provided by local authority to identify the status of the party that has drawn up the settlement document.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.5.5 CertificateIdentification <CertId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification number of the tax report as assigned by the taxing authority.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.5.6 FormsCode <FrmsCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies, in a coded form, on which template the tax report is to be provided.

Datatype: ["Max35Text" on page 352](#)

6.1.28.5.7 Period <Prd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

Period <Prd> contains the following elements (see ["TaxPeriod2" on page 312](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Date		313
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		313
	FromDate <FrDt>	[0..1]			314
	ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		314
	Details <Dtls>	[1..1]	Date		314

6.1.28.5.8 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the amount of the tax record.

TaxAmount <TaxAmt> contains the following elements (see ["TaxAmount2" on page 311](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		311
	TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	311
	TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	312
	Details <Dtls>	[0..*]	±		312

6.1.28.5.9 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the tax record.

Datatype: ["Max140Text" on page 351](#)

6.1.28.6 TaxInformation7

Definition: Details about tax paid, or to be paid, to the government in accordance with the law, including pre-defined parameters such as thresholds and type of account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]			318
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		319
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		319
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		319
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]			319
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		319
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		320
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		320
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			320
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		320
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		320
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]			320
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		321
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		321
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		321
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			321
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		321
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		322
	AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		322
	ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		322
	Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		322
	TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	322
	TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	322
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		323
	SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		323
	Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]	±		323

6.1.28.6.1 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains the following **TaxParty1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		319
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		319
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		319

6.1.28.6.1.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax identification number of the creditor.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.6.1.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.6.1.3 TaxType <TaxTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of tax payer.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.6.2 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains the following **TaxParty2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		319
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		320
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		320
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			320
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		320
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		320

6.1.28.6.2.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax identification number of the debtor.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.6.2.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.28.6.2.3 TaxType <TaxTp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Type of tax payer.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.28.6.2.4 Authorisation <Authstn>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Details of the authorised tax paying party.**Authorisation <Authstn>** contains the following **TaxAuthorisation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		320
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		320

6.1.28.6.2.4.1 Title <Titl>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Title or position of debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 352**6.1.28.6.2.4.2 Name <Nm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Name of the debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 351**6.1.28.6.3 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the taxing authority.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains the following **TaxParty2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		321
	RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		321
	TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		321
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			321
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		321
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		322

6.1.28.6.3.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax identification number of the debtor.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.6.3.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.6.3.3 TaxType <TaxTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of tax payer.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.6.3.4 Authorisation <Authstn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Details of the authorised tax paying party.

Authorisation <Authstn> contains the following **TaxAuthorisation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		321
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		322

6.1.28.6.3.4.1 Title <Titl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Title or position of debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.6.3.4.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.28.6.4 AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.6.5 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 351

6.1.28.6.6 Method <Mtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 352

6.1.28.6.7 TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money on which the tax is based.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.28.6.8 TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 325

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.1.28.6.9 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date by which tax is due.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 346

6.1.28.6.10 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Sequential number of the tax report.

Datatype: "Number" on page 349

6.1.28.6.11 Record <Rcrd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Record of tax details.

Record <Rcrd> contains the following elements (see "TaxRecord2" on page 315 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		316
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		316
	CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		316
	DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		316
	CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		316
	FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		316
	Period <Prd>	[0..1]	±		317
	TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]	±		317
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		317

6.2 Message Datatypes

6.2.1 Amount

6.2.1.1 ActiveCurrencyAndAmount

Definition: A number of monetary units specified in an active currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

Type: Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveCurrencyCode" on page 326

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.2.1.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAnd13DecimalAmount

Definition: A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217. The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) is not checked as per ISO 4217: It must be lesser than or equal to 13.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Type: Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Format

minInclusive	0
--------------	---

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	13

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.2.1.3 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount

Definition: A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

Type: Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 326

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.2.1.4 ImpliedCurrencyAndAmount

Definition: Number of monetary units specified in a currency where the unit of currency is implied by the context and compliant with ISO 4217. The decimal separator is a dot.

Note: a zero amount is considered a positive amount.

Type: Amount

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

6.2.2 CodeSet

6.2.2.1 ActiveCurrencyCode

Definition: A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.2.2.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode

Definition: A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.2.2.3 AddressType2Code

Definition: Specifies the type of address.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

6.2.2.4 AttendanceContext1Code

Definition: Human attendance at the POI location during the transaction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ATTD	Attended	Attended payment, with an attendant.
SATT	SemiAttended	Semi-attended, including self checkout. An attendant supervises several payment, and could be called to help the cardholder.
UATT	Unattended	Unattended payment, no attendant present.

6.2.2.5 AuthenticationEntity1Code

Definition: Entity or object in charge of verifying the cardholder authenticity.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ICCD	ICC	Application in the chip card (Integrated Circuit Card), for instance an offline PIN verification.
AGNT	AuthorisedAgent	Authorisation agent of the issuer.
MERC	Merchant	Merchant (for example signature verification by the attendant).

6.2.2.6 AuthenticationMethod1Code

Definition: Method used to authenticate a cardholder.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
UKNW	UnknownMethod	Authentication method is performed unknown.
BYPS	Bypass	Authentication bypassed by the merchant.

CodeName	Name	Definition
NPIN	OnLinePIN	On-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
FPIN	OfflinePIN	Off-line PIN authentication (Personal Identification Number).
CPSG	SignatureCapture	Electronic signature capture (handwritten signature).
PPSG	PaperSignature	Handwritten paper signature.
MANU	ManualVerification	Manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
MERC	MerchantAuthentication	Merchant-related authentication.
SCRT	SecureCertificate	Electronic commerce transaction secured with the X.509 certificate of a customer.
SNCT	SecureNoCertificate	Secure electronic transaction without cardholder certificate.
SCNL	SecuredChannel	Channel-encrypted transaction.

6.2.2.7 CardDataReading1Code

Definition: Type of reading of the card data.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
TAGC	Tag	Tag reading capabilities (RFID, etc.).
PHYS	Physical	Keyboard entry or OCR reading of embossing or printed data, either at time of transaction or after the event.
BRCD	BarCode	Bar code.
MGST	MagneticStripe	Magnetic stripe.
CICC	ICC	ICC (Integrated Circuit Card) with contact containing software applications conform to ISO 7816.
DFLE	AccountData	Account data on file.
CTLS	ProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader.
ECTL	EMVProximityReader	Contactless proximity reader, with application conform to the standard EMV (standard initiated by Europay, Mastercard and Visa).

6.2.2.8 CardholderVerificationCapability1Code

Definition: Cardholder verification capabilities of the POI (Personal Identification Number) performing the transaction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MNSG	ManualSignature	Manual signature verification.
NPIN	OnLinePIN	Online PIN (Personal Identification Number).
FCPN	OfflinePINClear	Offline PIN in clear (Personal Identification Number).
FEPN	OfflinePINEncrypted	Offline PIN encrypted (Personal Identification Number).
FDSG	OfflineDigitalSignature	Offline digital signature analysis.
FBIO	OfflineBiometrics	Offline biometrics.
MNVR	ManualVerification	Other manual verification, for example passport or drivers license.
FBIG	OfflineBiographics	Offline biographics.
APKI	AccountDigitalSignature	Account based digital signature.
PKIS	PKISignature	PKI (Public Key Infrastructure) based digital signature.
CHDT	CardholderData	Cardholder authentication data.
SCEC	SecureElectronicCommerce	Three domain secure (three domain secure authentication of the cardholder).

6.2.2.9 CardPaymentServiceType2Code

Definition: Service provided by the card payment transaction, in addition to the main service.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
AGGR	Aggregation	Aggregation of low payments.
DCCV	DCC	Dynamic currency conversion (DCC).
GRTT	Gratuity	Card payment with gratuity.
INSP	Instalment	Instalment payment.
LOYT	Loyalty	Loyalty services.
NRES	NoShow	No show after reservation.
PUCO	PurchaseCorporate	Purchase and corporate data.
RECP	RecurringPayment	Recurring payment.
SOAF	SolicitedAvailableFunds	Solicited available funds.
UNAF	UnsolicitedAvailableFunds	Unsolicited available funds.
VCAU	VoiceAuthorisation	Voice authorisation.

6.2.2.10 ChargeBearerType1Code

Definition: Specifies which party(ies) will pay charges due for processing of the instruction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

6.2.2.11 CopyDuplicate1Code

Definition: Specifies if this document is a copy, a duplicate, or a duplicate of a copy.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CODU	CopyDuplicate	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes and the message is a duplicate of a message previously sent.
COPY	Copy	Message is being sent as a copy to a party other than the account owner, for information purposes.
DUPL	Duplicate	Message is for information/confirmation purposes. It is a duplicate of a message previously sent.

6.2.2.12 CountryCode

Definition: Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}

Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

6.2.2.13 CreditDebitCode

Definition: Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

6.2.2.14 CSCManagement1Code

Definition: CSC (Card Security Code) management associated with the transaction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
PRST	CSCPresent	Card security code present.
BYPS	CSCByPass	Card security code by-passed or not provided by the merchant.
UNRD	CSCUnread	Card security code unreadable.
NCSC	NoCSC	No card security code imprint.

6.2.2.15 DocumentType3Code

Definition: Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RADM	RemittanceAdviceMessage	Document is a remittance advice sent separately from the current transaction.
RPIN	RelatedPaymentInstruction	Document is a linked payment instruction to which the current payment instruction is related, eg, in a cover scenario.
FXDR	ForeignExchangeDealReference	Document is a pre-agreed or pre-arranged foreign exchange transaction to which the payment transaction refers.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.
SCOR	StructuredCommunicationReference	Document is a structured communication reference provided by the creditor to identify the referred transaction.

6.2.2.16 DocumentType6Code

Definition: Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.
PUOR	PurchaseOrder	Document is a purchase order.

6.2.2.17 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.18 ExternalBalanceSubType1Code

Definition: Specifies the balance sub-type, as published in an external balance sub-type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.19 ExternalBalanceType1Code

Definition: Specifies the balance type, as published in an external balance type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.20 ExternalBankTransactionDomain1Code

Definition: Specifies the bank transaction code domain, as published in an external bank transaction code domain code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.21 ExternalBankTransactionFamily1Code

Definition: Specifies the bank transaction code family, as published in an external bank transaction code family code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.22 ExternalBankTransactionSubFamily1Code

Definition: Specifies the bank transaction code sub-family, as published in an external bank transaction code sub-family code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.23 ExternalCardTransactionCategory1Code

Definition: Specifies the category of card transaction in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.24 ExternalCashAccountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.25 ExternalChargeType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the charges in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.26 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	5

6.2.2.27 ExternalCreditLineType1Code

Definition: Specifies the external credit line type code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code set published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.28 ExternalDiscountAmountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
-----------	---

maxLength	4
-----------	---

6.2.2.29 ExternalDocumentLineType1Code

Definition: Specifies the document line type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.30 ExternalEntryStatus1Code

Definition: Specifies the status of an entry on the books of the account servicer, as published in an external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.31 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.32 ExternalFinancialInstrumentIdentificationType1Code

Definition: Specifies the external financial instrument identification type scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.33 ExternalGarnishmentType1Code

Definition: Specifies the garnishment type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.34 ExternalLocalInstrument1Code

Definition: Specifies the external local instrument code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

6.2.2.35 ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.36 ExternalPersonIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.37 ExternalPurpose1Code

Definition: Specifies the external purpose code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.38 ExternalReportingSource1Code

Definition: Specifies the reporting source, as published in an external reporting source code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.39 ExternalRePresentmentReason1Code

Definition: Specifies the external representment reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters. The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.40 ExternalReturnReason1Code

Definition: Specifies the return reason, as published in an external return reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.41 ExternalTaxAmountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.42 ExternalTechnicalInputChannel1Code

Definition: Specifies the technical input channel, as published in an external technical input channel code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.43 FloorLimitType1Code

Definition: Indicates whether the floor limit applies to credit, to debit or to both credit and debit entries.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRED	Credit	Floor limit applies to credit entries.
DEBT	Debit	Floor limit applies to debit entries.
BOTH	Both	Floor limit applies to both credit and debit entries.

6.2.2.44 InterestType1Code

Definition: Indicates which type of interest is applied to a balance left on an account.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDY	IntraDay	During or within a business day.
OVNR	OverNight	Period of time between the end of a business day and the start of the next business day (usually the day after).

6.2.2.45 ISO2ALanguageCode

Definition: Identification of the language name according to the ISO 639-1 codes. The type is validated by the list of values coded with two alphabetic characters, defined in the standard.

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern [a-z]{2,2}

6.2.2.46 NamePrefix1Code

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.

6.2.2.47 OnLineCapability1Code

Definition: On-line and off-line capabilities of the POI (Point Of Interaction).

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
OFLN	OffLine	Off-line only capable.
ONLN	OnLine	On-line only capable.
SMON	SemiOffLine	Off-line capable with possible on-line requests to the acquirer.

6.2.2.48 PartyType3Code

Definition: Identification of the type of entity involved in a transaction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
OPOI	OriginatingPOI	Point Of Interaction initiating the card payment transaction.
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.

CodeName	Name	Definition
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
DLIS	DelegatIssuer	Party to whom the card issuer delegates to authorise card payment transactions.

6.2.2.49 PartyType4Code

Definition: Entity assigning an identification (for example merchant, acceptor, acquirer, tax authority, etc.).

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant providing goods and service in the card payment transaction.
ACCP	Acceptor	Card acceptor, party accepting the card and presenting transaction data to the acquirer.
ITAG	IntermediaryAgent	Party acting on behalf of other parties to process or forward data to other parties.
ACQR	Acquirer	Entity acquiring card transactions.
CISS	CardIssuer	Party that issues cards.
TAXH	TaxAuthority	Tax authority.

6.2.2.50 POIComponentType1Code

Definition: Generic component type belonging to a POI (Point of Interaction) Terminal.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
SOFT	Soft	Payment or other software application.
EMVK	EMVKernel	EMV application kernel (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
EMVO	EMVLevel1	EMV physical interface (EMV is the chip card specifications initially defined by Eurocard, Mastercard and Visa).
MRIT	MerchantInterface	Merchant interface.
CHIT	CardholderInterface	Cardholder Interface.
SECM	SecureModule	Security module.
PEDV	PINEntryDevice	Personal identification number (or PIN) entry device (PED).

6.2.2.51 PriceValueType1Code

Definition: Specifies a type of value of the price.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DISC	Discount	Price expressed as a number of percentage points below par, for example, a discount price of 2.0% equals a price of 98 when par is 100.
PREM	Premium	Price expressed as a number of percentage points above par, for example, a premium price of 2.0% equals a price of 102 when par is 100.
PARV	Par	Price is the face amount.

6.2.2.52 QueryType3Code

Definition: Specifies the nature of the request, that is whether all information be returned or only information that has changed since the last similar request was returned.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ALLL	All	Specifies that the query requests that all matching items be returned.
CHNG	Changed	Specifies that the query requests that only new matching items since the last similar query be returned.
MODF	Modified	Specifies that the query requests that only items that have changed since the last query be returned.

6.2.2.53 RemittanceLocationMethod2Code

Definition: Specifies the method used to deliver the remittance advice information.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FAXI	Fax	Remittance advice information must be faxed.
EDIC	ElectronicDataInterchange	Remittance advice information must be sent through Electronic Data Interchange (EDI).
URID	UniformResourceIdentifier	Remittance advice information needs to be sent to a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). URI is a compact string of characters that uniquely identify an abstract or physical resource. URI's are the super-set of identifiers, such as URLs, email addresses, ftp sites, etc, and as such, provide the syntax for all of the identification schemes.

CodeName	Name	Definition
EMAL	EMail	Remittance advice information must be sent through e-mail.
POST	Post	Remittance advice information must be sent through postal services.
SMSM	SMS	Remittance advice information must be sent through by phone as a short message service (SMS).

6.2.2.54 TaxRecordPeriod1Code

Definition: Specifies the period related to the tax payment.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

6.2.2.55 TransactionChannel1Code

Definition: Identifies the type of the communication channels used by the cardholder to the acceptor system.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	MailOrder	Mail order.
TLPH	TelephoneOrder	Telephone order.
ECOM	ElectronicCommerce	Electronic commerce.
TVPY	TelevisionPayment	Payment on television.

6.2.2.56 TransactionEnvironment1Code

Definition: Indicates the environment of the transaction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MERC	Merchant	Merchant environment.
PRIV	Private	Private environment.
PUBL	Public	Public environment.

6.2.2.57 UnitOfMeasure1Code

Definition: Unit of measure of the item purchased.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
PIEC	Piece	Standard length of cloth, wallpaper, as an item for sale or amount of a substance.
TONS	Ton	Measure of weight, in Britain 2240lb (long ton) and in the US 2000lb (short ton).
FOOT	Foot	Unit of length equal to 1/3 yard.
GBGA	GBGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
USGA	USGallon	Unit of volume that is equal to 8 pints.
GRAM	Gram	Unit of measure that is equal to a 1,000th of a kilo.
INCH	Inch	Measure of length equal to 2.54 cm.

CodeName	Name	Definition
KILO	Kilogram	Basic unit of mass in the SI system, 1000 grams.
PUND	Pound	Unit of weight equal to 0.454 kilograms.
METR	Metre	Unit of length in the metric system, equal to 39.37 inches.
CMET	Centimetre	Unit of measure that is equal to one hundredth of a metre.
MMET	Millimetre	Unit of measure that is a thousandth of one metre.
LITR	Litre	Unit of volume that is equal to a thousand cubic centimetres.
CELI	Centilitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one hundredth of a litre.
MILI	MilliLitre	Unit of volume that is equal to one thousandth of a litre.
GBOU	GBOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.
USOU	USOunce	Unit of weight equal to a sixteenth of a pound.
GBQA	GBQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.
USQA	USQuart	Unit of volume that is equal to 2 pints.
GBPI	GBPint	Unit of volume that is equal to 568 cubic centimetres.
USPI	USPint	Unit of volume that is equal to 473 cubic centimetres.
MILE	Mile	Unit of length equal to 1, 760 yards.
KMET	Kilometre	Unit of measure that is equal to 1, 000 meters.
YARD	Yard	Unit of length equal to 3 feet or 0.9144 metre.
SQKI	SquareKilometre	Measure of a surface, one kilometre by one kilometre.
HECT	Hectare	Unit of measure that is equal to 10, 000 square meters.
ARES	Are	Unit of measure equal to a 100 square meters.
SMET	SquareMetre	Measure of a surface, one metre by one metre.
SCMT	SquareCentimetre	Measure of a surface, one centimetre by one centimetre.
SMIL	SquareMillimetre	Measure of a surface, one millimetre by one millimetre.
SQMI	SquareMile	Measure of a surface, one mile by one mile.

CodeName	Name	Definition
SQYA	SquareYard	Measure of a surface, one yard by one yard.
SQFO	SquareFoot	Measure of a surface, one foot by one foot.
SQIN	SquareInch	Measure of a surface, one inch by one inch.
ACRE	Acre	Unit of measure equal to 4, 840 square yards.

6.2.2.58 UserInterface2Code

Definition: Type of interface to display a message.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MDSP	MerchantDisplay	Merchant display or interface.
CDSP	CardholderDisplay	Cardholder display or interface.

6.2.3 Date

6.2.3.1 ISODate

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Type: Date

6.2.4 DateTime

6.2.4.1 ISODateTime

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

Type: DateTime

6.2.5 IdentifierSet

6.2.5.1 AnyBICIdentifier

Definition: Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: SWIFT; AnyBICIdentifier

Format

pattern [A-Z]{6,6}[A-Z2-9][A-NP-Z0-9]([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

6.2.5.2 BICFIIdentifier

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: SWIFT; BICFIIdentifier

Format

pattern [A-Z]{6,6}[A-Z2-9][A-NP-Z0-9]([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

Constraints

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

6.2.5.3 IBAN2007Identifier

Definition: An identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 13616: 2007 - "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: National Banking Association; International Bank Account Number (ISO 13616)

Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}

Constraints

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

6.2.5.4 ISINOct2015Identifier

Definition: International Securities Identification Number (ISIN). A numbering system designed by the United Nation's International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO). The ISIN is composed of a 2-character prefix representing the country of issue, followed by the national security number (if one exists), and a check digit. Each country has a national numbering agency that assigns ISIN numbers for securities in that country.

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: ANNA; ISINIdentifier

Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{9,9}[0-9]{1,1}

6.2.6 Indicator**6.2.6.1 ChargeIncludedIndicator**

Definition: Indicates whether charges have already been included.

Type: Indicator

Meaning When True: Included

Meaning When False: Pre-advised

6.2.6.2 TrueFalseIndicator

Definition: A flag indicating a True or False value.

Type: Indicator

Meaning When True: True

Meaning When False: False

6.2.6.3 YesNoIndicator

Definition: Indicates a "Yes" or "No" type of answer for an element.

Type: Indicator

Meaning When True: Yes

Meaning When False: No

6.2.7 Quantity**6.2.7.1 DecimalNumber**

Definition: Number of objects represented as a decimal number, eg, 0.75 or 45.6.

Type: Quantity

Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

6.2.7.2 NonNegativeDecimalNumber

Definition: Number of objects represented as a non negative decimal number, eg, 0.75 or 45.6.

Type: Quantity

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

6.2.7.3 Number

Definition: Number of objects represented as an integer.

Type: Quantity

Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	0

6.2.8 Rate

6.2.8.1 BaseOneRate

Definition: Rate expressed as a decimal, eg, 0.7 is 7/10 and 70%.

Type: Rate

Format

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	1.0

6.2.8.2 PercentageRate

Definition: Rate expressed as a percentage, ie, in hundredths, eg, 0.7 is 7/10 of a percent, and 7.0 is 7%.

Type: Rate

Format

totalDigits	11
-------------	----

fractionDigits	10
baseValue	100.0

6.2.9 Text

6.2.9.1 Exact1NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 1 digit.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]
---------	-------

6.2.9.2 Exact3NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 3 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]{3}
---------	----------

6.2.9.3 Exact4AlphaNumericText

Definition: Specifies an alphanumeric string with a length of 4 characters.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[a-zA-Z0-9]{4}
---------	----------------

6.2.9.4 Max1025Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 1025 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	1025

6.2.9.5 Max105Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 105 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
-----------	---

maxLength	105
-----------	-----

6.2.9.6 Max140Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	140

6.2.9.7 Max15NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]{1,15}
---------	-------------

6.2.9.8 Max15PlusSignedNumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits and may be prefixed with a plus sign.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[+]{0,1}[0-9]{1,15}
---------	---------------------

6.2.9.9 Max16Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	16

6.2.9.10 Max2048Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	2048

6.2.9.11 Max34Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	34

6.2.9.12 Max350Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 350 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	350

6.2.9.13 Max35Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

6.2.9.14 Max3NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 3 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]{1,3}
---------	------------

6.2.9.15 Max4Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.9.16 Max500Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 500 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	500

6.2.9.17 Max5NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 5 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]{1,5}
---------	------------

6.2.9.18 Max70Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	70

6.2.9.19 Min2Max3NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with a minimum length of 2 digits, and a maximum length of 3 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]{2,3}
---------	------------

6.2.9.20 Min3Max4NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with a minimum length of 3 digits, and a maximum length of 4 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]{3,4}
---------	------------

6.2.9.21 Min8Max28NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with a minimum length of 8 digits, and a maximum length of 28 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern [0-9]{8,28}

6.2.9.22 PhoneNumber

Definition: The collection of information which identifies a specific phone or FAX number as defined by telecom services.

It consists of a "+" followed by the country code (from 1 to 3 characters) then a "-" and finally, any combination of numbers, "(", ")", "+" and "-" (up to 30 characters).

Type: Text

Format

pattern \+[0-9]{1,3}-[0-9()+\-]{1,30}

6.2.10 Time

6.2.10.1 ISOTime

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar day expressed in either UTC time format (hh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (hh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (hh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

Type: Time

6.2.11 YearMonth

6.2.11.1 ISOYearMonth

Definition: Month within a particular calendar year represented by YYYY-MM (ISO 8601).

Type: YearMonth